This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

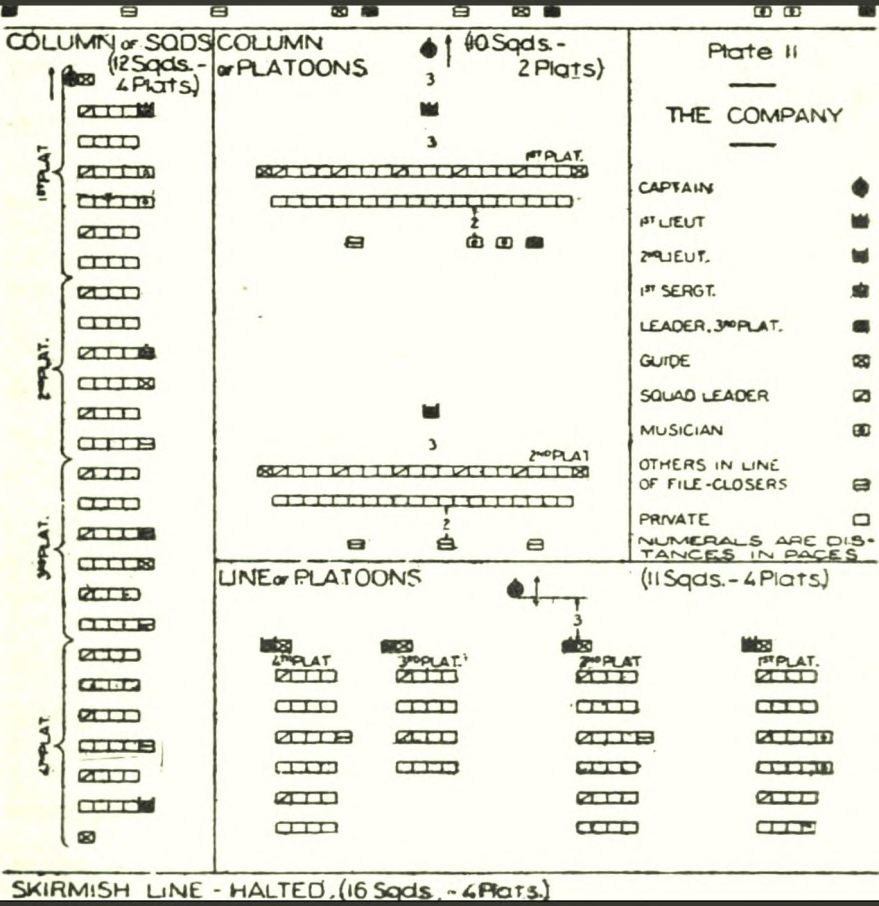
+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`



Infantry drill regulations, United States Army

George Washington Stuart

Wax 1209.15.3

HARVARD UNIVERSITY

ELIOT HOUSE LIBRARY

THE GIFT OF

.....

TRANSFERRED

LEGE

Digitized by Google

60
TA
17
4

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

[SIXTH EDITION.]

CATECHISMAL EDITION

Infantry Drill Regulations

UNITED STATES ARMY.

PREPARED BY
CAPT. GEORGE W. STUART,
United States Army.
1912.

DRILL REGULATIONS 1911.
CORRECTED TO 1915.

FRANKLIN HUDSON PUBLISHING CO.,
KANSAS CITY, MO.
1915.

Digitized by Google

War 1209.15.3

HARVARD COLLEGE
LIBRARY

Copyrighted, 1915, by
Franklin Hudson Publishing Co.,
Kansas City, Mo.

Copyrighted, 1912, by
Franklin Hudson Publishing Co.,
Kansas City, Mo.

Digitized by Google

Order of Subjects.

Definitions. 9
Introduction. 11
General Rules for Drills and Formations. 13
Orders, Commands, and Signals. 18
School of the Soldier. 24
Instruction without Arms. 24
Position of the Soldier, or Attention. 25
The Rests 25
Eyes Right or Left. 26
Facings. 26
Salute with the Hand. 26
Steps and Marchings. 27
Quick Time 27
To Mark Time. 28
The Half Step. 28
Side Step 28
Back Step 29
To Halt 29
To March by the Flank. 29
To March to the Rear. 30
Change Step 30
Manual of Arms. 30
General Rules Governing the Execution of the Manual of Arms 34
Rifle Salute 38
The Bayonet 38
The Inspection 39
To Dismiss the Squad. 40
School of the Squad. 41
To Form the Squad. 42
Alignments. 42
To Take Intervals and Distances. 43
To Stack and Take Arms. 44
The Oblique March. 45

Digitized by Google

School of the Squad—Continued.
To Turn on Moving Pivot..... 46
To Turn on Fixed Pivot..... 46
To Follow the Corporal..... 47
To Deploy as Skirmishers..... 48
To Increase or Diminish Intervals..... 48
The Assembly 48
Kneeling and Lying Down..... 49
Loadings and Firings..... 50
To Load 51
To Unload 52
To Set the Sight..... 52
To Fire by Volley..... 52
To Fire at Will..... 53
To Fire by Clip..... 54
To Suspend Firing..... 54
To Cease Firing..... 54
The Use of Cover..... 55
Observation. 56

School of the Company..... 57

Close Order 60
To Form the Company..... 61
To Dismiss the Company..... 62
Alignments. 62
Movements on the Fixed Pivot..... 63
Movements on the Moving Pivot..... 64
Facing or Marching to the Rear..... 65
On Right (Left) into Line..... 66
Front into Line..... 66
At Ease and Route Step..... 67
To Diminish the Front of a Column of Squads..... 67

Extended Order 68
Deployments. 70
The Assembly 71
The Advance 71
The Fire Attack..... 74
The Company in Support..... 75
The Company Acting Alone..... 76

Digitized by Google

Extended Order—Continued.
Fire. . . . 76
Ranges. . . . 77
Classes of Firing . . . 78
The Target . . . 78
Fire Direction . . . 79
Fire Control . . . 80
Fire Discipline . . . 81

School of the Battalion . . . 83
Close Order . . . 84
To Form the Battalion . . . 87
To Dismiss the Battalion . . . 88
To Rectify the Column . . . 88
On Right (Left) into Line . . . 89
Front into Line . . . 89
To Form Column of Companies . . . 90
To Form Column of Squads . . . 90
To Change Direction . . . 91
Mass Formations . . . 91
To Extend the Mass . . . 92
Route Step and at Ease . . . 92
Assembly. . . . 93
Combat Principles . . . 93
Deployment. . . . 94
Fire. . . . 96
Attack. . . . 96
Defense. . . . 100
The Regiment . . . 102
Close Order . . . 104
Combat Principles . . . 107
The Brigade . . . 108

Combat. . . . 110
Introduction. . . . 110
Leadership. . . . 112
Combat Reconnaissance . . . 119
Fire Superiority . . . 121
Fire Direction and Control . . . 122
Observation. . . . 125

Digitized by Google

Combat—Continued.
Discipline. 125
Expenditure of Ammunition. 125
Supporting Artillery 126
Fire of Position. 127
Deployment. 127
Attack. 130
Deployment for Attack. 132
Advancing the Attack. 132
The Fire Attack. 133
The Charge 134
Pursuit. 137
Attack of Fortifications. 137
Holding Attack 138
Defense. 138
Counter Attack 142
Delaying Action 143
Meeting Engagements 143
Withdrawal from Action. 145
Summary. 146
Miscellaneous. 148
Machine Gun 148
Ammunition Supply 149
Mounted Scouts 150
Night Operations 151
Infantry Against Cavalry. 155
Infantry Against Artillery. 156
Artillery Supports 157
Intrenchments. 157
Minor Warfare 163
Patrols. 165
Marches and Camps. 170
Marches. 170
Protection on the March. 173
Camps. 178
Protection of Camp or Bivouac. 183
Ceremonies and Inspections. 191
Ceremonies. 191

Digitized by Google

Ceremonies and Inspections—Continued.
Reviews. 192
Parades. 198
Escorts. 201
Inspections. 205
Muster. 211

Manuals. 214
The Color 214
The Band 217
Manual of the Saber. 220
Manual of Tent-Pitching. 223
Manual of the Bugle. 228

Appendix to Infantry Drill Regulations. 247

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

DEFINITIONS.

Alignment: A straight line upon which several elements are formed or are to be formed, or the dressing of several elements upon a straight line.

Base: The element on which a movement is regulated.

Battle sight: The position of the rear sight when the leaf is laid down.

Center: The middle point or element of a command.

Column: A formation in which the elements are placed one behind another.

Deploy: To extend the front. In general, to change from column to line, or from close order to extended order.

Depth: The space from head to rear of any formation, including the leading and rear elements. The depth of a man is assumed to be 12 inches.

Distance: Space between elements in the direction of depth. Distance is measured from the back of the man in front to the breast of the man in rear. The distance between ranks is 40 inches in both line and column.

Element: A file, squad, platoon, company, or larger body, forming part of a still larger body.

File: Two men, the front-rank man and the corresponding man of the rear rank. The front-rank man is the **file leader.** A file which has no rear-rank man is a **blank file.** The term **file** applies also to a single man in a single-rank formation.

File-closers: Such officers and non-commissioned officers of a company as are posted in rear of the line. For convenience, all men posted in the line of file-closers.

Digitized by Google

Flank: The right or left of a command in line or in column; also the element on the right or left of the line.

Formation: Arrangement of the elements of a command. The placing of all fractions in their order in line, in column, or for battle.

Front: The space, in width, occupied by an element, either in line or in column. The front of a man is assumed to be 22 inches. Front also denotes the direction of the enemy.

Guide: An officer, non-commissioned officer, or private upon whom the command or elements thereof regulates its march.

Head: The leading element of a column.

Interval: Space between elements of the same line. The interval between men in ranks is 4 inches and is measured from elbow to elbow. Between companies, squads, etc., it is measured from the left elbow of the left man or guide of the group on the right, to the right elbow of the right man or guide of the group on the left.

Left: The left extremity or element of a body of troops.

Line: A formation in which the different elements are abreast of each other.

Order, close: The formation in which the units, in double rank, are arranged in line or in column with normal intervals and distances.

Order, extended: The formation in which the units are separated by intervals greater than in close order.

Pace: Thirty inches; the length of the full step in quick time.

Point of rest: The point at which a formation begins. Specifically, the point toward which units are aligned in successive movements.

Rank: A line of men placed side by side.

Right: The right extremity or element of a body of troops.

Digitized by Google

PART I.

DRILL.

INTRODUCTION.

1. What is the ultimate object of all military training?

SUCCESS IN BATTLE. Success may be looked for only when the training is intelligent and thorough.

2. Who are accountable for the proper training, within the limit prescribed by regulations and orders?

Commanding officers are held thus accountable for their respective organizations.

By what is the excellence of an organization judged?

Its field efficiency.

Upon what does the field efficiency of an organization primarily depend?

Its effectiveness as a whole.

3. What are essential to correct training for battle?

Simple movements and elastic formations.

4. What is the object of furnishing drill regulations?

They are furnished as a guide, and they provide principles for training and for increasing the probability of success in battle.

What should be sought in the interpretation of the regulations, and what should be avoided?

The SPIRIT of the regulations should be sought, and QUIBBLING over the minutiæ of form should be avoided.

5. NOTE.—The principles of combat are treated in Part II.

6. (a) What is the object of ceremonies and drills at "attention"?

They are **disciplinary exercises,** designed to teach precise and soldierly movements and to inculcate that prompt and subconscious obedience which is essential to military control.

To this end, what should be exacted?

Smartness and precision in the execution of every detail.

Digitized by Google

(b) **What is the purpose of EXTENDED ORDER DRILL?**
To teach the mechanism of deployment, of the firings, and, in general, of the employment of troops in combat.
What is the nature of such drills?
They are in the nature of disciplinary exercises, and should be frequent, thorough, and exact, in order to habituate the men to the firm control of their leaders.
In what manner is extended order drill executed?
"At ease."
What is the largest unit which executes extended order drill?
The company.

(c) **What is the purpose of field exercises?**
Instruction in the duties incident to campaign.
How should each exercise conclude?
With a discussion, on the ground, of the exercise and the principles involved.

(d) **What does the combat exercise consist of?**
The application of tactical principles to assumed situations, employing, in the execution, the appropriate formations and movements of close and extended order.
What must c o m b a t exercises simulate, as far as possible?
The battle conditions assumed.
Since the firing-line can rarely be controlled by the voice alone, what training is necessary?
A thorough training to insure the proper use of the prescribed signals.
What should the combat exercise be followed by, and why?
By a brief drill at attention, in order to restore smartness and control.

7. In field exercises, when is the enemy said to be "imaginary," when "outlined," and when "represented"?
The enemy is said to be "imaginary" when his position and force are merely assumed; "outlined," when his position and force are indicated by a few men; "represented," when a body of troops act as such.

Digitized by Google

GENERAL RULES FOR DRILLS AND FORMATIONS.

8. When movements are to be executed successively by subdivisions or elements of an organization, and the preparatory command consists of more than one part, how are the elements of the command arranged?

(a) Description of the movement; (b) how executed, or on what element.

When movements are to be executed simultaneously by the subdivisions of an organization, and the preparatory command consists of more than one part, how are the elements of the command arranged?

(a) The designation of the subdivisions; (b) the movement to be executed.

9. When movements that may be executed toward either flank are explained as toward but one flank, what is necessary to have the explanation of the corresponding movement toward the other flank?

Substitute the word "left" for "right," and the reverse.

10. May any movement be executed either from the halt or when marching?

Yes; unless otherwise prescribed.

If at a halt, is it necessary that the command for a movement involving marching be prefaced by "forward"?

No.

11. May any movement be executed in double time?

Yes; unless specially excepted.

If at a halt, or if marching in quick time, what precedes the command of execution?

The command **Double time.**

12. In successive movements executed in double time, how does the leading or base unit march, and how do the other units march?

The leading or base unit marches in "quick time," when not otherwise prescribed; the other units march in "double time" to their places in the formation ordered and then conform to the gait of the leading or base unit.

If marching in double time, what command is omitted, and how do the units march?

Digitized by Google

The command **Double time** is omitted; the leading or base unit marches in "quick time"; the other units continue at "double time" to their places in the formation ordered and then conform to the gait of the leading or base unit.

13. When a movement is begun in quick time, how is the execution hastened?

The command: **1. Double time, 2. MARCH,** is given.

How is this command executed?

The leading or base unit continues to march in quick time or remains at halt, if already halted; the other units complete the execution of the movement in double time and then conform to the gait of the leading or base unit.

14. When marching, how is the execution of a movement stayed for the correction of errors?

By the command: **1. In place, 2. HALT.**

How is this command executed?

All halt and stand fast, without changing the position of the pieces.

How is the movement resumed?

By the command: **1. Resume, 2. MARCH.**

15. What command revokes a preparatory command, or, being at a halt, puts troops in a position to begin anew a movement improperly begun, and how is the command executed?

The command. **AS YOU WERE,** at which the movement ceases and the former position is resumed.

16. Unless otherwise announced, in which direction is the guide?

The guide of a company or subdivision of a company in line is right; the guide of a battalion in line or line of subdivisions or of a deployed line is center; the guide of a rank in column of squads is toward the side of the guide of the company.

How do troops march with the guide other than as prescribed above, or how is the guide changed?

The command **Guide (right, left, or center)** is given.

In what direction is the guide in successive formations into line, and in what subdivisions is it announced?

Toward the point of rest; in platoons or larger subdivisions.

Digitized by Google

IN commands, when is the announcement of the guide made, and if there is an exception, state it?

Immediately after the command of execution for the movement.

Exception: **1. As skirmishers, guide right (left or center), 2. MARCH.**

17. By what bodies of troops, and for what purpose, is THE TURN ON THE FIXED PIVOT used?

By subdivisions, in all formations from line into column and the reverse.

By what bodies of troops, and for what purpose, is THE TURN ON THE MOVING PIVOT used?

By subdivisions of a column, in executing changes of direction.

18. How may partial changes in direction be executed?

1st. By interpolating in the preparatory command the word **half,** as **Column half right (left), or Right (left) half turn.** A change of direction of 45° is executed.

2d. By the command: **INCLINE TO THE RIGHT (LEFT).**

How is this last command executed?

The guide or guiding element moves in the indicated direction and the remainder of the command conforms. This movement effects slight changes of direction.

19. To what do the designations "line of platoons," "line of companies," "line of battalions," etc., refer?

They refer to the formations in which the platoons, companies, battalions, etc., each in column of squads, are in line.

20. What is the meaning of the term "full distance" in column of subdivisions?

It is such distance that, in forming line to the right or left, the subdivisions will have their proper intervals.

In column of subdivisions, what are the guides charged with?

The guide of the leading subdivision is charged with the step and direction; the guides in rear preserve the trace, step, and distance.

21. In close order, what is the habitual formation of all details, detachments, and other bodies of troops?

Double rank.

How is the uniformity between files assured when falling in and in alignments?

Digitized by Google

Each man places the palm of the left hand on the hip, fingers pointing downward. In the first case, the hand is dropped by the side when the man next on the left has his interval; in the second case, at the command **FRONT.**

22. NOTE.—The posts of officers, non-commissioned officers, special units (such as band or machine-gun company), etc., in the various formations of the company, battalion, or regiment, are shown in the plates.

In all changes from one formation to another involving a change of post on the part of any of these, how are the posts taken?

By the most convenient route as soon as practicable after the command of execution for the movement, and if any officers or non-commissioned officers have prescribed duties in connection with the movement ordered, they take their new posts when such duties are completed.

How do officers and non-commissioned officers conduct themselves as instructors?

They go wherever their presence is necessary.

What are their duties as file-closers?

To rectify mistakes and insure steadiness and promptness in the ranks.

23. Where are the places for the special units, and how do they conduct themselves?

They have no fixed places, except at ceremonies. They take places as directed. In the absence of directions, they conform as nearly as practicable to the plates, and in subsequent movements maintain their relative positions with respect to the flank or end of the command on which they were originally posted.

24. What officers are habitually mounted?

General, field, and staff officers.

Where and how does the staff of an officer form?

Three paces in rear of him in single rank, the right of the rank extending one pace to the right of a point directly in rear of him.

How are members of the staff arranged?

In order, from right to left, as follows: general staff officers, adjutant, aides, other staff officers, arranged in each classification in order of rank, the senior on the right.

Where are the orderlies and flag of the general officer placed?

Digitized by Google

Three paces in rear of the staff, the flag on the right.

When necessary, how is the front of the staff and orderlies reduced?

Each line executes **twos right** or **fours right,** as explained in the Cavalry Drill Regulations, and follows the commander.

When do staff officers draw and return saber?

With their chief, when not otherwise prescribed.

25. In making the about, which way does an officer, mounted, habitually turn?

To the left.

When the commander faces to give commands, do the staff, flag, and orderlies change position?

No.

26. At all military formations, what are the regulations governing salutes?

When making or receiving official reports, all officers will salute, if covered; if uncovered, they stand at attention.

When under arms, the salute is made with the sword or saber if drawn, otherwise with the hand. A mounted officer dismounts before addressing a superior not mounted.

On meeting, all officers salute when covered; when uncovered, they exchange the courtesies observed between gentlemen.

Military courtesy requires the junior to salute first, but when the salute is introductory to a report made at a military ceremony or formation, to the representative of a common superior—as, for example, to the adjutant, officer of the day, etc.—the officer making the report, whatever his rank, will salute first; the officer to whom the report is made will acknowledge by saluting, if covered, or verbally, if uncovered, that he has received and understood the report.

27. For ceremonies, how are all mounted enlisted men of a regiment or smaller unit, except those belonging to the machine-gun organizations, arranged?

They are consolidated into a detachment; the senior present commands, if no officer is in charge. The detachment is formed as a platoon or squad of cavalry in line or column of fours; non-commissioned staff officers are on the right or in the leading ranks.

28. For ceremonies, how are dismounted non-commissioned staff officers arranged?

They are formed five paces in rear of the color, in order of rank, from right to left. In column of squads, they march as file-closers.

29. When not at ceremonies, where do non-commissioned staff officers and orderlies march?

Digitized by Google

They accompany their immediate chiefs, unless otherwise directed. If mounted, the non-commissioned staff officers are ordinarily posted on the right or at the head of the orderlies.

30. In all formations and movements, where does a non-commissioned officer commanding a platoon or company take post, and how does he carry his piece?

He takes the same post as an officer in like situation, and carries his piece as the men do, if he is so armed.

When the command is formed in line for ceremonies, where does a non-commissioned officer commanding a company take post?

On the right of the right guide, after the company has been aligned.

ORDERS, COMMANDS, AND SIGNALS.

31. On what occasion are commands used, and orders and signals excluded?

In drill at attention.

Otherwise, what is used?

A command, signal, or order is employed, as best suits the occasion, or one may be used in conjunction with another.

32. Why should signals be freely used in instruction?

In order that officers and men may readily know them.

33. When do officers and men fix their attention?

At the first word of command, the first note of the bugle or the whistle, or the first motion of the signal.

What is included in a signal, and when does the movement signalled commence?

A signal includes both the preparatory command and the command of execution; the movement commences as soon as the signal is understood, unless otherwise prescribed.

34. Except in movements executed at attention, when do commanders or leaders of subdivisions repeat orders, commands, or signals?

Whenever such repetition is deemed necessary to insure prompt and correct execution.

Who are equipped with whistles?

Officers, platoon leaders, guides, and musicians.

Do the guides and musicians repeat signals?

They assist by repeating signals when necessary.

Are all the whistles of the same tone?

Battalion and company commanders will use a whistle of different tone from that of the whistle used by platoon leaders, guides, and musicians.

Digitized by Google

35. How are the prescribed signals limited?

They are limited to such as are essential as a substitute for the voice under conditions which render the voice inadequate.

What may be done to facilitate the solution of such special difficulties as the particular situation is likely to develop?

Special signals may be agreed upon before or during an engagement.

What are the indispensable qualities of a signal?

Simplicity and certainty.

ORDERS.

36. In the drill regulations, what does the term embrace?

Instructions or directions given orally or in writing in terms suited to the particular occasion and not prescribed therein.

When only are orders employed?

When the commands prescribed in drill regulations do not sufficiently indicate the will of the commander

COMMANDS.

37. In drill regulations, what is the meaning of the term "a command"?

It is the will of the commander expressed in the phraseology prescribed therein.

38. What are the two kinds of commands, and what do they indicate?

The **preparatory** command, which indicates the movement that is to be executed, and the command of **execution**, which causes the execution.

How are the two kinds of commands distinguished in drill regulations?

Preparatory commands by **bold face**, those of **execution** by **CAPITALS.**

Where the text does not mention who gives the commands prescribed, by whom are they to be given?

By the commander of the unit concerned.

With relation to each other, when are the two kinds of commands given?

The **preparatory** command should be given at such an interval of time before the command of **execution** as to admit of being properly understood; the command of **execution** should be given at the instant the movement is to commence.

Digitized by Google

Describe the tone of command.

It is animated, distinct, and of a loudness proportioned to the number of men for whom it is intended.

Describe the manner of giving the preparatory command and the command of execution.

The **preparatory** command is enunciated distinctly, with a rising inflection at the end, and in such manner that the command of **execution** may be more energetic. The command of **execution** is firm in tone and brief.

39. What commanders of units repeat such commands of their superior as are to be executed by their units?

Majors and commanders of units larger than a battalion. They face their units for this purpose.

What is the largest unit that executes a movement at the command of execution of its commander?

A battalion.

40. How should a commander face when giving commands to troops?

It is usually best to face toward them.

How should commands be given, and what must be avoided in giving commands?

Commands should be given with spirit at all times. Indifference must be avoided, as it leads to laxity in execution.

BUGLE SIGNALS.

41. What bugle signals may be used off the field of battle when not likely to convey information to the enemy, and what do the troops do at these signals?

ATTENTION; troops are brought to attention. **ATTENTION TO ORDERS**; troops fix their attention. **FORWARD, MARCH**; used also to execute quick time from double time. **DOUBLE TIME, MARCH. TO THE REAR, MARCH**; in close order, execute squads right about. **HALT. ASSEMBLE, MARCH.**

What bugle signals may be used on the battle-field?

Fix Bayonets, CHARGE. Assemble, MARCH.

When only are these signals used, and by whom can they be authorized?

When intended for the entire firing-line, they can be authorized by the commander of a unit (for example, a regiment or brigade) which occupies a distinct section of the battle-field. Exception: **FIX BAYONET.** (See par. 318.)

Digitized by Google

What bugle signals are used in exceptional cases on the battle-field?

COMMENCE FIRING; officers charged with fire-direction and control open fire as soon as practicable. When given to a firing-line, the signal is equivalent to **FIRE AT WILL.**

CEASE FIRING; all parts of the line execute cease firing at once.

What units do not use these signals?

Units smaller than a regiment do not use these signals, except when such unit is independent or detached from its regiment.

WHISTLE SIGNALS.

42. What whistle signals are used, and for what purpose?

ATTENTION TO ORDERS; a short blast of the whistle. This signal is used on the march or in combat when necessary to fix the attention of troops, or of their commanders or leaders, preparatory to giving commands, orders, or signals. When the firing-line is firing, each squad leader suspends firing and fixes his attention at a short blast of his platoon leader's whistle. The platoon leader's subsequent commands or signals are repeated and enforced by the squad leader. If a squad leader's attention is attracted by a whistle other than that of his platoon leader, or if there are no orders or commands to convey to his squad, he resumes firing at once.

SUSPEND FIRING; a long blast of the whistle.

ARM SIGNALS.

43. How are arm signals made?

With either arm.

What precaution is taken to prevent misunderstanding?

Officers who receive signals on the firing-line "repeat back" at once.

Name and describe the prescribed arm signals.

FORWARD, MARCH. Carry the hand to the shoulder; straighten and hold the arm horizontally, thrusting it in direction of march. This signal is also used to execute quick time from double time.

HALT. Carry the hand to the shoulder; thrust the hand upward, and hold the arm vertically.

DOUBLE TIME, MARCH. Carry the hand to the shoulder;

Digitized by Google

rapidly thrust the hand upward the full extent of the arm several times.

SQUADS RIGHT, MARCH. Raise the arm laterally until horizontal; carry it to a vertical position above the head and swing it several times between the vertical and horizontal positions.

SQUADS LEFT, MARCH. Raise the arm laterally until horizontal; carry it downward to the side and swing it several times between the downward and horizontal positions.

SQUADS RIGHT ABOUT, MARCH (if in close order), or **TO THE REAR, MARCH** (if in skirmish-line). Extend the arm vertically above the head; carry it laterally downward to the side and swing it several times between the vertical and downward positions.

CHANGE DIRECTION, or **COLUMN RIGHT (LEFT), MARCH.** The hand on the side toward which the change of direction is to be made is carried across the body to the opposite shoulder, forearm horizontal; then swing in a horizontal plane, arm extended, pointing in the new direction.

AS SKIRMISHERS, MARCH. Raise both arms laterally until horizontal.

AS SKIRMISHERS, GUIDE CENTER, MARCH. Raise both arms laterally until horizontal; swing both simultaneously upward until vertical and return to the horizontal; repeat several times.

AS SKIRMISHERS, GUIDE RIGHT (LEFT), MARCH. Raise both arms laterally until horizontal; hold the arm on the side of the guide steadily in the horizontal position; swing the other upward until vertical and return it to the horizontal; repeat several times.

ASSEMBLE, MARCH. Raise the arm vertically to its full extent and describe horizontal circles.

RANGE, or **CHANGE ELEVATION.** To announce range, extend the arm toward the leaders or men for whom the signal is intended, fist closed; by keeping the fist closed battle sight is indicated; by opening and closing the fist, expose thumb and fingers to a number equal to the hundreds of yards; to add fifty yards, describe a short horizontal line with the forefinger. To change elevation, indicate the amount of increase or decrease by fingers, as above; point upward to indicate increase and downward to indicate decrease.

SUSPEND FIRING. Raise and hold the forearm steadily in a horizontal position in front of the forehead, palm of the hand to the front.

Digitized by Google

CEASE FIRING. Raise the forearm as in "suspend firing" and swing it up and down several times in front of the face.

PLATOON. Extend the arm horizontally toward the platoon leaders; describe small circles with the hand.

SQUAD. Extend the arm horizontally toward the platoon leaders; swing the hand up and down from the wrist.

RUSH. Same as double time.

44. What are the signals PLATOON and SQUAD intended for primarily, and what do they indicate?

For communication between the captain and his platoon leaders. They indicate that the platoon commander is to cause the signal which follows to be executed by platoon or squad.

FLAG SIGNALS.

45. Who carries the company flags in the field?

The company musicians.

Describe the company flags.

1st battalion: Co. A—Red field, white square.
Co. B—Red field, blue square.
Co. C—Red field, white diagonals.
Co. D—Red field, blue diagonals.

2d battalion: Co. E—White field, red square.
Co. F—White field, blue square.
Co. G—White field, red diagonals.
Co. H—White field, blue diagonals.

3d battalion: Co. I—Blue field, red square.
Co. K—Blue field, white square.
Co. L—Blue field, red diagonals.
Co. M—Blue field, white diagonals

46. For what purposes may these flags be used?

(a) To mark the assembly-point of the company when disorganized by combat; (b) to mark the location of the company in bivouac and elsewhere, when such use is desirable; (c) in visual signaling.

47. In the absence of signal flags, what may be used?

The head-dress or other substitute.

What precaution should be taken in the transmission of signals between the firing-line and the reserve or commander in rear?

They should be concealed from the enemy's view.

Digitized by Google

Describe the signals used between the firing-line and the reserve or commander in rear.

Letter of Alphabet.	If Signaled from the Rear to the Firing-line.	If Signaled from the Firing-line to the Rear.
A A A....	Ammunition going forward	Ammunition required.
C C C....	Charge (mandatory at all times)	Am about to charge, if no instructions to the contrary.
C F.....	Cease firing	Cease firing.
D T	Double time or "rush" ..	Double time or "rush."
F.....	Commence firing	
F B.....	Fix bayonets	
G	Move forward	Preparing to move forward.
H H H...	Halt.....	
K	Negative.....	Negative.
L.....	Left	Left.
O	What is the (R N, etc.)?..	What is the (R N, etc.)?
P.....	Affirmative	Affirmative.
R N	Range	Range .....
R T	Right.....	Right.
S S S.....	Support going forward ...	Support needed.
S U F....	Suspend firing	Suspend firing.
T	Target	Target.

School of the Soldier.

48. How does the instructor conduct the drill?

He explains briefly each movement, first executing it himself, if practicable. He requires the recruits to take the proper positions unassisted, and does not touch them for the purpose of correcting them, except when they are unable to correct themselves. He avoids keeping them too long at the same movement, although each should be understood before passing to another. He exacts by degrees the desired precision and uniformity.

49. How are the recruits grouped, and why?

According to proficiency as instruction progresses, in order that all may advance as rapidly as their ability permits.

Digitized by Google

What is done with those who lack aptitude and quickness?

They are separated from the others and placed under experienced drill-masters.

INSTRUCTION WITHOUT ARMS.

50. How are recruits formed for preliminary instruction?

A number, usually not exceeding three or four, are formed as a squad in single rank.

POSITION OF THE SOLDIER, OR ATTENTION.

51. Describe the position of the soldier.

Heels on the same line and as near each other as the conformation of the man permits; feet turned out equally and forming an angle of about 45°; knees straight, without stiffness; hips level and drawn back slightly; body erect and resting equally on the hips; chest lifted and arched; shoulders square and falling equally; arms and hands hanging naturally, thumb along the seam of the trousers; head erect and squarely to the front, chin drawn in so that the axis of the head and neck is vertical; eyes straight to the front; weight of the body resting equally upon the heels and balls of the feet.

THE RESTS.

52. Being at a halt, what are the commands for relaxing the position of attention?

(a) **FALL OUT**; (b) **REST**; (c) **AT EASE**; (d) **1. PARADE, 2. REST.**

How are these commands executed?

(a) At the command **FALL OUT,** the men may leave the ranks, but are required to remain in the immediate vicinity. They resume their former places, at attention, at the command **FALL IN.**

(b) At the command **REST,** each man keeps one foot in place, but is not required to preserve silence or immobility.

(c) At the command **AT EASE,** each man keeps one foot in place and is required to preserve silence, but not immobility.

53. (d) At the command **1. PARADE, 2. REST,** carry the right foot 6 inches to the rear, left knee slightly bent; clasp the hands, without constraint, in front of the center of the body, fingers joined, left hand uppermost, left thumb clasped by the thumb and forefinger of the right hand; preserve silence and steadiness of position.

Digitized by Google

54. What is the command for resuming attention, and how is it executed?

1. Squad, 2. ATTENTION, at which the men take the position of the soldier.

EYES RIGHT OR LEFT.

55. How is the command, 1. Eyes, 2. RIGHT (LEFT), 3. FRONT, executed?

At the command **RIGHT,** turn the head to the right oblique, eyes fixed on the line of eyes of the men in, or supposed to be in, the same rank. At the command **FRONT,** turn the head and eyes to the front.

FACINGS.

56. What is the command for facing to the flank, and how is it executed?

1. Right (Left), 2. FACE. Raise slightly the left heel and right toe; face to the right, turning on the right heel, assisted by a slight pressure on the ball of the left foot; place the left foot by the side of the right. Left face is executed on the left heel in the corresponding manner.

NOTE.—**Right (Left), HALF FACE** is executed similarly, facing 45°.

How do you execute "to face in marching" and advance?

Turn on the ball of either foot and step off with the other foot in the new line of direction.

How do you execute "to face in marching" without gaining ground in the new direction?

Turn on the ball of either foot and mark time.

57. What is the command for facing to the rear, and how is it executed?

1. About, 2. FACE. Carry the toe of the right foot about half a foot-length to the rear and slightly to the left of the left heel without changing the position of the left foot; face to the rear, turning to the right on the left heel and right toe; place the right heel by the side of the left.

SALUTE WITH THE HAND.

58. What is the command for, and how do you execute, the salute with the hand?

1. Right hand, 2. SALUTE. Raise the right hand smartly till the tip of the forefinger touches the lower part of the head-dress above the right eye, thumb and fingers extended and joined, palm

Digitized by Google

to the left, forearm inclined, at about 45°, hand and wrist straight; at the same time look toward the person saluted. (**TWO**) Drop the arm smartly by the side.

STEPS AND MARCHINGS.

59. With which foot do all steps and marchings, executed from a halt, begin?

The left foot. (Exception, right step.)

60. What is the length of the full step in quick time, and the cadence?

Length, 30 inches, measured from heel to heel; cadence, 120 steps per minute.

What is the length of the full step in double time, and the cadence?

Length, 36 inches; cadence, 180 steps per minute.

When necessary, how does the instructor indicate the cadence of the step?

By calling **One, Two, Three, Four,** or **Left, Right,** the instant the left and right foot, respectively, should be planted.

61. In what cadence are all steps, marchings, and movements, involving march, executed?

Quick time, unless the squad be marching in double time or double time be added to the command; in the latter case, double time is added to the preparatory command.

QUICK TIME.

62. Being at a halt, what is the command for marching forward in quick time, and how is it executed?

1. Forward, 2. MARCH. At the command **Forward,** shift the weight of the body to the right leg, left knee straight. At the command **March,** move the left foot smartly straight forward thirty inches from the right, sole near the ground, and plant it without shock; next, in like manner, advance the right foot and plant it as above; continue the march. The arms swing naturally.

63. Being at a halt or marching at quick time, what is the command for marching in double time, and how is it executed?

1. Double time, 2. MARCH. If at a halt, at the first com-

Digitized by Google

mand shift the weight of the body to the right leg. At the command **March,** raise the forearms, fingers closed, to a horizontal position along the waist-line; take up an easy run with the step and cadence of double time, allowing a natural swinging motion to the arms. If marching in quick time, at the command **March,** given as either foot strikes the ground, take one step in quick time and then step off in double time.

64. Marching in double time, what is the command for resuming the quick time, and how is it executed?

1. Quick time, 2. MARCH. At the command **March,** given as either foot strikes the ground, advance and plant the other foot in double time; resume the quick time, dropping the hands by the sides.

TO MARK TIME.

65. Being in march, what is the command to mark time, and how is it executed?

1. Mark time, 2. MARCH. At the command **March,** given as either foot strikes the ground, advance and plant the other foot; bring up the foot in rear and continue the cadence by alternately raising each foot about two inches and planting it on line with the other. Being at a halt, at the command **March,** raise and plant the feet as described above.

THE HALF STEP.

66. What is the command for, and how do you execute, the half step?

1. Half step, 2. MARCH. Take steps of fifteen inches in quick time, eighteen inches in double time.

67. May the movements Forward, Half step, Halt, and Mark time be executed one from the other in quick or double time?

Yes.

What is the command for resuming the full step from half step or mark time?

1. Forward, 2. MARCH.

SIDE STEP.

68. Being at a halt or mark time, what is the command for executing the side step, and how is it executed?

1. Right (Left) step, 2. MARCH. Carry and plant the right

Digitized by Google

foot fifteen inches to the right; bring the left foot beside it and continue the movement in cadence of quick time.

Is the side step used for long distances, or is it executed in double time?

No.

If at order arms, is it necessary to give the command "At trail" when executing the side step?

The position **at trail** is taken without command.

BACK STEP.

69. Being at a halt or mark time, what is the command for executing the back step, and how is it executed?

1. Backward, 2. MARCH. Take steps of fifteen inches straight to the rear.

Is the back step used for long distances, or is it executed in double time?

No.

If at order arms, is it necessary to give the command "At trail" when executing the back step?

No; the position **at trail** is taken without command.

TO HALT.

70. What is the command for arresting the march in quick or double time, and how is it executed?

1. Squad, 2. HALT. At the command **Halt,** given as either foot strikes the ground, plant the other foot as in marching; raise and place the first foot by the side of the other; if in double time, drop the hands by the sides.

TO MARCH BY THE FLANK.

71. Being in march, what is the command for marching by the flank, and how is it executed?

1. By the right (left) flank, 2. MARCH. At the command **March,** given as the right foot strikes the ground, advance and plant the left foot, then face to the right in marching and step off in the new direction with the right foot.

Digitized by Google

TO MARCH TO THE REAR.

72. Being in march, what is the command for marching to the rear, and how is it executed?

1. To the rear, 2. MARCH. At the command **March,** given as the right foot strikes the ground, advance and plant the left foot; turn to the right about on the balls of both feet and immediately step off with the left foot; if marching in double time, turn to the right about, taking four steps in place, keeping the cadence, and then step off with the left foot.

CHANGE STEP.

73. Being in march, what is the command for changing step, and how is it executed?

1. Change step, 2. MARCH. At the command **March,** given as the right foot strikes the ground, advance and plant the right foot; plant the toe of the right foot near the heel of the left and step off with the left foot. The change on the right foot is similarly executed, the command **March** being given as the left foot strikes the ground.

MANUAL OF ARMS.

74. When is the recruit taught the use, nomenclature, and care of his rifle?

As soon as practicable.

When is he taught the manual of arms?

When fair progress has been made in the instruction without arms. Instruction without arms and that with arms alternate.

75. Give the general rule for carrying the piece with cartridges in either the chamber or magazine?

The piece is not carried with cartridges in either the chamber or magazine except when specifically ordered. When so loaded or supposed to be loaded, it is habitually carried locked—that is, with the safety lock turned to the "safe." At all other times it is carried unlocked, with the trigger pulled.

What is the general rule concerning inspections whenever troops are formed under arms?

Pieces are immediately inspected at the commands: **1. Inspection. 2. ARMS: 3. Order (right shoulder, port), 4. ARMS.**

Digitized by Google

er or

tually

)r for

piece

se are
ion of

rule,

larch

com-

n the
r dis-

e the

piece

ion of

ich a

Digitized by Google

rear,

the r
turn
step
right
then

and l

as th
plant
with
cuted
the g

of his

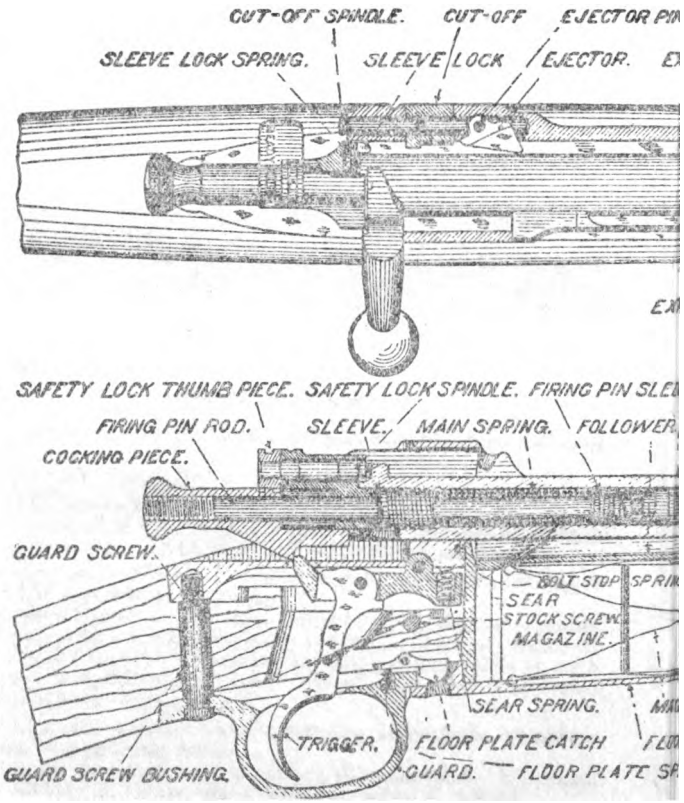
arms.

in eit

or ma
suppo
the sa
unloc

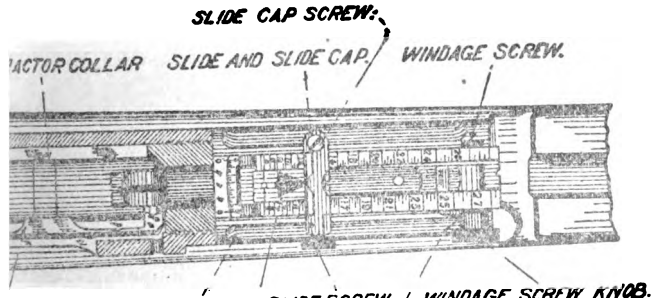
troops

tion.



7201°—11.

Digitized by Google



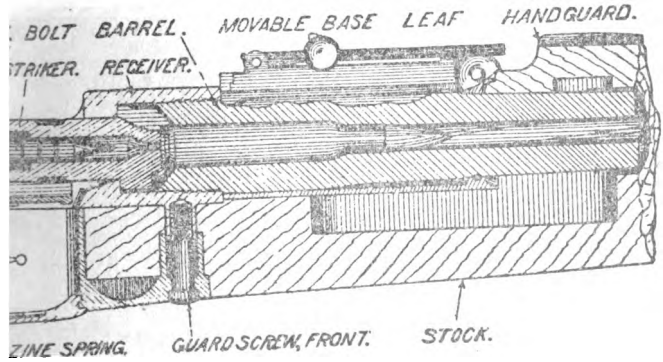


PLATE
NG

.ber or

ctually

-or for

piece

ise are
ion of

e rule,
March

com-

n the
r dis-

ie the

piece

ion of

ich a

Digitized by Google

rear,

the r
turn
step
right
then

and l

as th
plant
with
cuted
the g

7
of his
A
V
V
arms.
7
in eit
T
or ma
suppo
the sa
unloc
V
troop
I
tion.

Digitized by Google

What is done immediately before dismissal?
A similar inspection is made.

What is done if cartridges are found in the chamber or magazine?
They are removed and placed in the belt.

What is the general rule for the cut-off?
It is kept turned "off," except when cartridges are actually used.

What is the general rule for the bayonet?
It is not fixed, except in bayonet exercise, on guard, or for combat.

What is the general rule governing the carrying of the piece when FALL IN is executed?
It is carried at the order arms. **Fall out, Rest,** and **At ease** are executed as without arms. On resuming attention, the position of order arms is taken.

If at the order, unless otherwise prescribed, what is the rule, governing the carrying of the piece at the command March?
It is brought to the right shoulder at the command **March** the three motions corresponding with the first three steps.

To execute movements at trail, what is necessary?
The command **At trail** must precede the preparatory command. The trail is taken at the command **March.**

What is the rule governing the carrying of the piece when the facings, alignments, open and close ranks, taking interval or distance, and assemblings are executed from the order?
Raise the piece to the trail while in motion and resume the order on halting.

What is the general rule governing the position of the piece on halting?
The piece is brought to the order on halting. The execution of the order begins when the halt is completed.

What is the general rule governing the position in which a disengaged hand is held in double time?
It is held as when without arms.

Digitized by Google

GENERAL RULES GOVERNING THE EXECUTION OF THE MANUAL OF ARMS.

76. What is the general rule governing the position of the left hand at the balance (center of gravity, bayonet unfixed)?

The thumb clasps the piece; the sling is included in the clasp of the hand.

What is the general rule governing the position of the piece, left arm, and hand in all positions of the piece "diagonally across the body"?

They are the same as in port arms.

What is the general rule governing the motion next to the last in resuming the order from any position in the manual?

It concludes with the butt of the piece about three inches from the ground, barrel to the rear, the left hand above and near the right, steadying the piece, fingers extended and joined, forearm and wrist straight and inclining downward, all fingers of the right hand grasping the piece.

How is the order completed?

Lower the piece gently to the ground with the right hand, drop the left quickly by the side, and take the position of order arms.

In executing the manual, what is prohibited?

Allowing the piece to drop through the right hand to the ground, or other similar abuse of the rifle, to produce effect.

What is the cadence of the motions in the manual of arms?

Quick time.

How does the instructor conduct the instruction of the recruits in the manual of arms?

He first requires them to give their whole attention to the details of the motion, the cadence being gradually acquired as they become accustomed to handling their pieces. He may require them to count aloud in cadence with the motions.

What is the method of teaching the manual of arms?

It is taught at a halt and the movements are, for the purpose of instruction, divided into motions and executed in detail; in this case the command of execution determines the prompt execution of the first motion, and the commands, **TWO, THREE, FOUR,** that of the other motions.

Digitized by Google

How does the instructor cause the movements to be executed in detail?

The instructor first cautions, **"By the numbers"**; all movements divided into motions are then executed as above explained until he cautions, **"Without the numbers"**; or commands movements other than those in the manual of arms.

May the regular positions of the manual of arms and the firings be ordered without regard to the previous position of the piece?

Yes; whenever circumstances require.

When may the rifle be carried in any manner directed?

Under exceptional conditions of weather or fatigue.

77. Describe the position of order arms standing.

The butt rests evenly on the ground, barrel to the rear, toe of the butt on a line with the toe of and touching the right shoe, arms and hands hanging naturally, right hand holding the piece between the thumb and fingers.

78. Being at order arms, what is the command for present arms, and how is it executed?

1. Present, 2. ARMS. With the right hand carry the piece in front of the center of the body, barrel to the rear and vertical, grasp it with the left hand at the balance, forearm horizontal and resting against the body. (TWO) Grasp the small of the stock with the right hand.

79. Being at order arms, what is the command for port arms, and how is it executed?

1. Port. 2. ARMS. With the right hand raise and throw the piece diagonally across the body, grasp it smartly with both hands, the right, palm down, at the small of the stock, the left, palm up, at the balance; barrel up, sloping to the left and crossing opposite the junction of the neck with the left shoulder; right forearm horizontal, left forearm resting against the body; the piece in a vertical plane parallel to the front.

80. Being at present arms, what is the command for port arms, and how is it executed?

1. Port, 2. ARMS. Carry the piece diagonally across the body and take the position of port arms.

81. Being at port arms, what is the command for present arms, and how is it executed?

Digitized by Google

1. Present, 2. ARMS. Carry the piece to a vertical position in front of the center of the body and take the position of present arms.

82. Being at present or port arms, what is the command for order arms, and how is it executed?

1. Order, 2. ARMS. Let go with the right hand; lower and carry the piece to the right with the left hand; regrasp it with the right hand just above the lower band; let go with the left hand and take the next to the last position in coming to the order. **(TWO)** Complete the order.

83. Being at order arms, what is the command for right shoulder arms, and how is it executed?

1. Right shoulder, 2. ARMS. With the right hand raise and throw the piece diagonally across the body; carry the right hand quickly to the butt, embracing it, the heel between the first two fingers. **(TWO)** Without changing the grasp of the right hand, place the piece on the right shoulder, barrel up, and inclined at an angle of about 45° from the horizontal, trigger guard in the hollow of the shoulder, right elbow near the side, the piece in a vertical plane perpendicular to the front; carry the left hand, thumb and fingers extended and joined, to the small of the stock, tip of the forefinger touching the cocking-piece, wrist straight and elbow down. **(THREE)** Drop the left hand by the side.

84. Being at right shoulder arms, what is the command for order arms, and how is it executed?

1. Order, 2. ARMS. Press the butt down quickly and throw the piece diagonally across the body, the right hand retaining the grasp of the butt. **(TWO), (THREE)** Execute order arms as described from port arms.

85. Being at port arms, what is the command for right shoulder arms, and how is it executed?

1. Right shoulder, 2. ARMS. Change the right hand to the butt. **(TWO), (THREE)** As in right shoulder arms from order arms.

86. Being at right shoulder arms, what is the command for port arms, and how is it executed?

Press the butt down quickly and throw the piece diagonally across the body, the right hand retaining its grasp of the butt. **(TWO)** Change the right hand to the small of the stock.

Digitized by Google

87. Being at right shoulder arms, what is the command for present arms, and how is it executed?

1. Present, 2. ARMS. Execute port arms. (THREE) Execute present arms.

88. Being at present arms, what is the command for right shoulder arms, and how is it executed?

Execute port arms. (TWO), (THREE), (FOUR) Execute right shoulder arms as from port arms.

89. Being at port arms, what is the command for left shoulder arms, and how is it executed?

1. Left shoulder, 2. ARMS. Carry the piece with the right hand and place it on the left shoulder, barrel up, trigger guard in the hollow of the shoulder; at the same time grasp the butt with the left hand, heel between the first and second fingers, thumb and fingers closed on the stock. (TWO) Drop the right hand by the side.

Being at left shoulder arms, what is the command for port arms, and how is it executed?

1. Port, 2. ARMS. Grasp the piece with the right hand at the small of the stock. (TWO) Carry the piece to the right with the right hand, re-grasp it with the left, and take the position of port arms.

From what positions may left shoulder arms be directly ordered, or the reverse, and how is it executed?

It may be ordered directly from the Order, **Right shoulder** or **Present.** At the command **Arms,** execute port arms, and continue in cadence to the position ordered.

90. Being at order arms, what is the command for parade rest, and how is it executed?

1. Parade, 2. REST. Carry the right foot six inches straight to the rear, left knee slightly bent; carry the muzzle in front of the center of the body, barrel to the left; grasp the piece with the left hand just below the stacking swivel and with the right hand below and against the left.

Being at parade rest, what is the command for bringing the squad to attention, and how is it executed?

1. Squad, 2. ATTENTION. Resume the order, the left hand quitting the piece opposite the right hip.

Digitized by Google

91. Being at order arms, what is the command for trail arms, and how is it executed?

1. Trail, 2. ARMS. Raise the piece, right arm slightly bent, and incline the muzzle forward so that the barrel makes an angle of about 30° with the vertical.

What other similar position may be used?

The piece may be grasped at the balance and the muzzle lowered until the piece is horizontal, when it can be done without danger or inconvenience to others; a similar position in the left hand may be used.

92. Being at trail arms, what is the command for order arms, and how is it executed?

1. Order, 2. ARMS. Lower the piece with the right hand and resume the order.

RIFLE SALUTE.

93. Being at right shoulder arms, what is the command for the rifle salute, and how is it executed?

1. Rifle, 2. SALUTE. Carry the left hand smartly to the small of the stock, forearm horizontal, palm of the hand down, thumb and fingers extended and joined, forefinger touching the end of the cocking-piece; look toward the person saluted. (TWO) Drop left hand by the side; turn the head and eyes to the front.

94. Being at order or trail arms, what is the command for the rifle salute, and how is it executed?

1. Rifle, 2. SALUTE. Carry the left hand smartly to the right side, palm of the hand down, thumb and fingers extended and joined, forefinger against the piece near the muzzle; look toward the person saluted. (TWO) Drop the left hand by the side; turn the head and eyes to the front.

THE BAYONET.

95. Being at order arms, what is the command for fixing the bayonet, and how is it executed?

1. Fix, 2. BAYONET. If the bayonet scabbard is carried on the belt, execute parade rest; grasp the bayonet with the right

Digitized by Google

hand, back of hand toward the body; draw the bayonet from the scabbard and fix it on the barrel, glancing at the muzzle; resume the order. If the bayonet is carried on the haversack, draw the bayonet with the left hand and fix it in the most convenient manner.

96. Being at order arms, what is the command for unfixing bayonet, and how is it executed?

1. Unfix, 2. BAYONET. If the bayonet scabbard is carried on the belt, execute parade rest; grasp the handle of the bayonet firmly with the right hand, pressing the spring with the forefinger of the right hand; raise the bayonet until the handle is about twelve inches above the muzzle of the piece; drop the point to the left, back of the hand toward the body, and, glancing at the scabbard, return the bayonet, the blade passing between the left arm and the body; re-grasp the piece with the right hand and resume the order. If the bayonet scabbard is carried on the haversack, take the bayonet from the rifle with the left hand and return it to the scabbard in the most convenient manner. If marching or lying down, the bayonet is fixed and unfixed in the most expeditious and convenient manner and the piece returned to the original position.

Are the movements fix and unfix bayonet executed with regularity and in cadence?

They are executed with promptness and regularity, but not in cadence.

97. What is the command for taking the position of charge bayonet, and how is it executed?

CHARGE BAYONET. The bayonet is held toward the opponent, as in the position of guard in the Manual for Bayonet Exercise.

May the position charge bayonet be taken while in motion or at a halt?

Yes.

THE INSPECTION.

98. Being at order arms, what is the command for executing the inspection, and how is it executed?

1. Inspection, 2. ARMS. At the second command, take the position of port arms. (TWO) Seize the bolt handle with the thumb and forefinger of the right hand, turn the handle up, draw the bolt back, and glance at the chamber. Having found the

Digitized by Google

chamber empty, or having emptied it, raise the head and eyes to the front.

99. Being at inspection arms, what is the command for bringing the piece to the order, the right shoulder, or the port arms, and how is it executed?

1. Order (Right shoulder, Port), 2. ARMS. At the preparatory command, push the bolt forward, turn the handle down, pull the trigger, and resume port arms.

At the command **Arms,** complete the movement ordered.

TO DISMISS THE SQUAD.

100. Being at a halt, what is the command for dismissing the squad?

1. Inspection, 2. ARMS; 3. Port, 4. ARMS; 5. DISMISSED.

Digitized by Google

School of the Squad.

101. Why are soldiers grouped into squads?
For purposes of instruction, discipline, control, and order.

102. What does the squad proper consist of?
A corporal and seven privates.

What are the movements in the School of the Squad designed for?
To make the squad a fixed unit and to facilitate the control and movement of the company.

What are the limiting numbers of men that are grouped to form a squad?
More than 3 and less than 12 are grouped as a squad of 4 files, the excess above 8 being posted as file-closers. If the number grouped is greater than 11, two or more squads are formed, and the group is termed a "platoon."

For the instruction of recruits, are these rules mandatory?
No; they may be modified.

103. Who is the squad leader?
The corporal is the squad leader, and when absent he is replaced by a designated private. If no private is designated, the senior in length of service acts as leader.

What is the post of the corporal when in ranks?
The left man in the front rank of the squad.

When the corporal leaves the ranks to lead his squad, how does the formation change?
His rear-rank man steps into the front rank and the file remains blank until the corporal returns to his place in ranks, when his rear-rank man steps back into the rear rank.

104. In battle, what are the duties of officers and sergeants as to squads?

Digitized by Google

They endeavor to preserve the integrity of squads; they designate new leaders to replace those disabled, organize new squads when necessary, and see that every man is placed in a squad.

What is taught the men as to the integrity of squads?

They are taught the necessity of remaining with the squad to which they belong, and in case it be broken up or they become separated therefrom, to attach themselves to the nearest squad and platoon leaders, whether these be of their own or of another organization.

105. How does the squad execute the halt, rests, facings, steps, and marchings, and the manual of arms?

As explained in the School of the Soldier.

TO FORM THE SQUAD.

106. Give the command and describe how the instructor forms the squad.

The instructor places himself three paces in front of where the center is to be and commands, **FALL IN.** The men assemble at attention, pieces at the order, and are arranged by the corporal in double rank, as nearly as practicable in order of height from right to left, each man dropping his left hand as soon as the man on his left has his interval. The rear rank forms with distance of forty inches. The instructor than commands, **COUNT OFF.** At this command all except the right file execute **eyes right,** and, beginning on the right the men in each rank count **one, two, three, four;** each man turns his head and eyes to the front as he counts. Pieces are then inspected.

ALIGNMENTS.

107. What is the command for and how is the squad aligned?

The base file or files having been established: **1. Right (Left), 2. DRESS, 3. FRONT.** At the command **Dress,** all men place the left hand upon the hip (whether dressing to the right or left); each man, except the base file, when on or near the new line, executes **eyes right,** and, taking steps of two or three inches, places himself so that his right arm rests lightly against the arm of the man on his right and so that his eyes and shoulders are in line with those of the men on his right; the rear-rank men cover in file; the instructor

Digitized by Google

verifies the alignment of both ranks from the right flank and orders up or back such men as may be in rear or in advance of the line; only the men designated move. At the command **Front,** given when the ranks are aligned, each man turns his head and eyes to the front and drops his left hand by his side. In the first drills the basis of the alignment is established on or parallel to the front of the squad; afterward in oblique directions.

Whenever the position of the base file or files necessitates a considerable movement by the squad, how will such movement be executed?

By marching to the front or oblique, to the flank or backward, as the case may be, without other command and at the trail.

108. What is the command for preserving the alignment when marching, and how is it executed?

GUIDE RIGHT (LEFT). The men preserve their intervals from the side of the guide, yielding to pressure from that side and resisting pressure from the opposite direction; they recover intervals, if lost, by gradually opening out or closing in; they recover alignment by slightly lengthening or shortening the step; the rear-rank men cover their file leaders at forty inches.

In double rank, who conducts the march?

The front-rank man on the right, or designated flank; when marching faced to the flank, the leading man of the front rank is the guide.

TO TAKE INTERVALS AND DISTANCES.

109. Being in line at a halt, what is the command for taking intervals, and how is it executed?

1. Take interval, 2. To the right (left), 3. MARCH; 4. Squad, HALT. At the second command, the rear-rank men march backward four steps and halt. At the command **March,** all face to the right and the leading man of each rank steps off; the other men step off in succession, each following the preceding man at four paces, rear-rank men marching abreast of their file leaders. At the command **Halt,** given when all have their intervals, all halt and face to the front.

110. Being at intervals, what is the command to assemble the squad, and how is it executed?

1. Assemble to the right (left), 2. MARCH. The front-rank

Digitized by Google

man on the right stands fast and the rear-rank man on the right closes to forty inches; the other men face to the right, close by the shortest line, and face to the front.

111. Being in line at a halt and having counted off, what is the command to take distance, and how is it executed?

1. Take distance, 2. MARCH; 3. Squad, 4. HALT. At the command **March,** No. 1 of the front rank moves straight to the front; Nos. 2, 3 and 4 of the front rank and Nos. 1, 2, 3, and 4 of the rear rank, in the order named, move straight to the front, each stepping off so as to follow the preceding man at four paces. The command **Halt** is given when all have their distances. In case more than one squad is in line, each squad executes the movement as above. The guide of each rank or number is right.

112. Being at distances, what is the command for assembling the squad, and how is it executed?

1. Assemble, 2. MARCH. No. 1 of the front rank stands fast; the other numbers move forward to their proper places in line.

TO STACK AND TAKE ARMS.

113. Being in line at a halt, what is the command for stacking arms, and how is it executed?

STACK ARMS. Each even number of the front rank grasps his piece with the left hand at the upper band and rests the butt between his feet, barrel to the front, muzzle inclined slightly to the front and opposite the center of the interval on his right, the thumb and forefinger raising the stacking swivel; each even number of the rear rank then passes his piece, barrel to the rear, to his file leader who grasps it between the bands with his right hand and throws the butt about two feet in advance of that of his own piece and opposite the right of the interval, the right hand slipping to the upper band, the thumb and forefinger raising the stacking swivel, which he engages with that of his own piece; each odd number of the front rank raises his piece with the right hand, carries it well forward, barrel to the front; the left hand, guiding the stacking swivel, engages the lower hook of the swivel of his own piece with the free hook of that of the even number of the rear rank; he then turns the barrel outward into the angle formed by the other two pieces and lowers the butt to the ground to the right of and against the toe of his right shoe. The stacks made, the loose pieces are laid on them by the even numbers of the front rank. When each man has finished handling pieces he takes the position of the soldier.

Digitized by Google

114. Being in line behind the stacks, what is the command for taking arms, and how is it executed?

TAKE ARMS. The loose pieces are returned by the even numbers of the front rank; each even number of the front rank grasps his own piece with the left hand, the piece of his rear-rank man with his right hand, grasping both between the bands; each odd number of the front rank grasps his piece in the same way with the right hand; disengages it by raising the butt from the ground, and then, turning the piece to the right, detaches it from the stack; each even number of the front rank disengages and detaches his piece by turning it to the left and then passes the piece of his rear-rank man to him, and all resume the order.

115. Should any squad have Nos. 2 and 3 blank files, what is done?

No. 1 rear rank takes the place of No. 2 rear rank in making and breaking the stack; the stacks made or broken, he resumes his post.

What are termed "loose pieces"?

Pieces not used in making the stack.

Are pieces stacked with the bayonet fixed?

Never.

THE OBLIQUE MARCH.

116. How are recruits taught their relative positions in the oblique march?

The squad being in column or correctly aligned, the instructor causes the squad to face half right or half left, points out to the men their relative positions, and explains that these are to be maintained in the oblique march.

117. What is the command for the oblique march, and how is it executed?

1. Right (Left) oblique, 2. MARCH. Each man steps off in a direction 45° to the right of his original front. He preserves his relative position, keeping his shoulders parallel to those of the guide (the man on the right front of the line or column), and so regulates his steps that the ranks remain parallel to their original front. At the command **Halt**, the men halt, faced to the front.

What is the command for resuming the original direction, and how is it executed?

1. Forward, 2. MARCH. The men half face to the left in marching and then move straight to the front.

Digitized by Google

If at half step or mark time while obliquing, what is the command for resuming the oblique march?

1. Oblique, 2. MARCH.

TO TURN ON MOVING PIVOT.

118. Being in line, what is the command for turning on moving pivot, and how is it executed?

1. Right (Left) turn, 2. MARCH. The movement is executed by each rank successively and on the same ground. At the second command, the pivot man of the front rank faces to the right in marching, and takes the half step; the other men of the rank oblique to the right until opposite their places in line, then execute a second right oblique and take the half step on arriving abreast of the pivot man. All glance toward the marching flank while at half step and take the full step without command as the last man arrives on the line.

How is right (left) half turn executed?

In a similar manner. The pivot man makes a half change of direction to the right and the other men make quarter changes in obliquing.

TO TURN ON FIXED PIVOT.

119. Being in line, what is the command for turning and marching, and how is it executed?

1. Squad right (left), 2. MARCH. At the command **March,** the right-flank man in the front rank faces to the right in marching and marks time; the other front-rank men oblique to the right, place themselves abreast of the pivot and mark time; in the rear rank the third man from the right, followed in column by the second and first, moves straight to the front until in rear of his front-rank man, when all face to the right in marching and mark time; the other number of the rear rank moves straight to the front four paces and places himself abreast of the man on his right. Men on the new line glance toward the marching flank while marking time, and, as the last man arrives on the line, both ranks execute **forward, march,** without command.

120. Being in line, what is the command to turn and halt, and how executed?

Digitized by Google

1. Squad right (left), 2. MARCH; 3. Squad, 4. HALT. The third command is given immediately after the second. The turn is executed as prescribed in the preceding paragraph, except that all men on arriving on the new line mark time till the fourth command is given, when all halt. The fourth command should be given as the last man arrives on the line.

121. Being in line, what is the command to turn about and march, and how executed?

1. Squad right (left), about, 2. MARCH. At the second command. the front rank twice executes **squad right,** initiating the second squad right when the man on the marching flank has arrived abreast of the rank. In the rear rank the third man from the right, followed by the second and first in column, moves straight to the front until on the prolongation of the line to be occupied by the rear rank; changes direction to the right; moves in the new direction until in rear of his front-rank man, when all face to the right in marching, mark time, and glance toward the marching flank. The fourth man marches on the left of the third to his new position; as he arrives on the line both ranks execute **forward, march,** without command.

122. Being in line, what is the command to turn about and halt, and how executed?

1. Squad right (left), about, 2. MARCH; 3. Squad, 4. HALT. The third command is given immediately after the second. The turn is executed as prescribed in the preceding paragraph, except that all men on arriving on the new line mark time till the fourth command is given, when all halt. The fourth command should be given as the last man arrives on the line.

TO FOLLOW THE CORPORAL.

128. Being assembled or deployed, how does the corporal march the squad without unnecessary commands, and how executed?

The corporal places himself in front of his squad and commands, **FOLLOW ME.** If in line or skirmish-line, No. 2 of the front rank follows in the trace of the corporal at about three paces; the other men conform to the movements of No. 2, guiding on him and maintaining their relative positions. If in column, the head of the column follows the corporal.

Digitized by Google

TO DEPLOY AS SKIRMISHERS.

124. Being in any formation assembled, what is the command to deploy as skirmishers, and how executed?

1. As skirmishers, 2. MARCH. The corporal places himself in front of the squad, if not already there. Moving at a run, the men place themselves abreast of the corporal at half-pace intervals, Nos. 1 and 2 on his right, Nos. 3 and 4 on his left, rear-rank men on the right of their file leaders, extra men on the left of No. 4; all then conform to the corporal's gait. When the squad is acting alone, skirmish-line is similarly formed on No. 2 of the front rank, who stands fast or continues the march, as the case may be; the corporal places himself in front of the squad when advancing and in rear when halted.

When deployed as skirmishers, how do the men march and carry their pieces?

At ease; pieces at the trail, unless otherwise ordered.

Who is the guide?

The corporal, when in line; otherwise, No. 2, front rank, is the guide.

125. What is the normal interval between skirmishers, how much front is occupied by one man and how much by one squad?

Normal interval, one-half pace; front occupied by one man, one yard; front occupied by one squad, about ten paces.

TO INCREASE OR DIMINISH INTERVALS.

126. If assembled, and it is desired to deploy at greater than the normal interval; or if deployed, and it is desired to increase or decrease the interval, what is the command, and how executed?

1. As skirmishers, (so many) paces, 2. MARCH. Intervals are taken at indicated number of paces. If already deployed, the men move by the flank toward or away from the guide.

THE ASSEMBLY.

127. Being deployed, what is the command for the assembly, and how executed?

1. Assemble, 2. MARCH. The men move toward the cor-

Digitized by Google

poral and form in their proper places. If the corporal continues to advance, the men move in double time, form, and follow him.

Is the assembly executed while marching to the rear?

No.

KNEELING AND LYING DOWN.

128. If standing, what is the command for kneeling, and how executed?

KNEEL. Half face to the right; carry the right toe about one foot to the left rear of the left heel; kneel on right knee, sitting as nearly as possible on the right heel; left forearm across left thigh; piece remains in position of order arms, right hand grasping it above the lower band.

129. If standing or kneeling, what is the command to lie down, and how executed?

LIE DOWN. Kneel, but with right knee against left heel; carry back the left foot and lie flat on the belly, inclining body about 35° to the right, piece horizontal, barrel up, muzzle off the ground and pointed to the front; elbows on the ground; left hand at the balance, right hand grasping the small of the stock opposite the neck. This is the position of **order arms,** lying down.

130. If kneeling or lying down, what is the command to rise, and how executed?

RISE. If kneeling, stand up, face to the front, on the ground marked by the left heel. If lying down, raise body on both knees; stand up, face to the front, on the ground marked by the knees.

131. If lying down, what is the command to kneel, and how executed?

KNEEL. Raise the body on both knees; take the position of **kneel.**

132. In double rank, for what only are the positions of kneeling and lying down ordinarily used?

For the better utilization of cover.

When deployed as skirmishers, may a sitting position be taken in lieu of the position kneeling?

Yes.

Digitized by Google

LOADINGS AND FIRINGS.

133. Do the commands for firing and loading differ when standing, kneeling, or lying down?

No.

Are the firings always executed at a halt?

Yes.

Does the rear rank load, aim, or fire when kneeling or lying down in double rank?

No.

What will the instruction in firing be preceded by?

By a command for loading.

In what formations are loadings executed?

In line and skirmish-line only.

134. Pieces being ordered loaded, is it necessary to give commands for further loading?

No; they are kept loaded without command until the command **Unload** or **Inspection arms,** fresh clips being inserted when the magazine is exhausted.

135. What is done in regard to the target and sight-setting?

The aiming-point or target is carefully pointed out; this may be done before or after announcing the sight-setting. Both are indicated before giving the command for firing, but may be omitted when the target appears suddenly and is unmistakable; in such case battle sight is used, if no sight-setting is announced.

136. The target or aiming-point having been designated and the sight-setting announced, is it necessary to repeat such a designation or announcement?

No; not until a change of either or both is necessary.

How are troops trained to deliver their fire?

They are trained to continue their fire upon the aiming-point or target designated and at the sight-setting announced until a change is ordered.

137. If the men are not in the position of LOAD, what do they do at the announcement of the sight-setting?

They take the position of load.

If the announcement is omitted, what do they do at the first command for firing?

They take the position of load.

Digitized by Google

138. When deployed, is the use of the sling as an aid to accurate firing allowed?

Its use is discretionary with each man.

TO LOAD.

139. Being in line or skirmish-line at halt, what is the command for loading, and how executed?

1. With dummy (blank or ball) cartridges, 2. LOAD. At the command **Load,** each front-rank man or skirmisher faces half right and carries the right foot to the right about one foot to such position as will insure the greatest firmness and steadiness of the body, raises or lowers the piece and drops it into the left hand at the balance, left thumb extended along the stock, muzzle at the height of the breast, and turns the cut-off up; with the right hand he turns and draws the bolt back, takes a loaded clip and inserts the end in the clip-slots, places the thumb on the powder-space of the top cartridge, the fingers extending around the piece and tips resting on the magazine floor-plate; forces the cartridges into the magazine by pressing down with the thumb; without removing the clip, thrust the bolt home, turning down the handle; turns the safety lock to the "safe," and carries the hand to the small of the stock. Each rear-rank man moves to the right front, takes a similar position opposite the interval to the right of his front-rank man, muzzle of the piece extending beyond the front rank, and loads.

May a skirmish-line load while moving?

Yes; the pieces being held as nearly as practicable in the position of **load.**

What is the position of the piece at the load, if kneeling or sitting, or lying down?

If kneeling or sitting, position of the piece is similar to that described above; if kneeling, the left forearm rests on the left thigh; if sitting, the elbows are supported by the knees; if lying down, the left hand steadies and supports the piece at the balance, the toe of the butt resting on the ground, the muzzle off the ground. For reference, these positions (standing, kneeling, and lying down) are designated as that of **load.**

140. What is the command for instruction in loading, and how executed?

1. Simulate, 2. LOAD. Executed as above described, except

Digitized by Google

that the cut-off remains "off" and the handling of cartridges is simulated.

What method is used to teach recruits loading and firing?

They are first taught to simulate loading and firing; after a few lessons, "dummy" cartridges may be used; later, blank cartridges may be used.

141. In what different ways may the rifle be used?

As a single loader, by turning the magazine "off." The magazine may be filled in whole or in part while "off" or "on" by pressing cartridges singly down and back until they are in the proper place. The use of the rifle as a single loader is, however, to be regarded as exceptional.

TO UNLOAD.

142. What is the command for unloading, and how executed?

UNLOAD. Take the position of **load,** turn the safety lock up, and move the bolt alternately back and forward until all the cartridges are ejected; after the last cartridge is ejected, the chamber is closed by first thrusting the bolt slightly forward to free it from the stud holding it in place when the chamber is open, pressing the follower down and back to engage it under the bolt and then thrusting the bolt home; the trigger is pulled; the cartridges are then picked up, cleaned, and returned to the belt, and the piece is brought to the order.

TO SET THE SIGHT.

148. What is the command for setting the sight, and how executed?

RANGE, ELEVEN HUNDRED (EIGHT-FIFTY), etc., or **BATTLE SIGHT.** The sight is set at the elevation indicated. The instructor explains and verifies sight-settings.

TO FIRE BY VOLLEY.

144. What is the command for firing by volley, and how executed?

1. READY, 2. AIM, 3. Squad, 4. FIRE. At the command **Ready,** turn the safety lock to the "ready"; at the command **Aim,** raise the piece with both hands and support the butt firmly against the hollow of the right shoulder, right thumb clasping the stock, barrel

Digitized by Google

horizontal, left elbow well under the piece, right elbow as high as the shoulder; incline the head slightly forward and a little to the right, cheek against the stock, left eye closed, right eye looking through the notch of the rear sight so as to perceive the object aimed at, second joint of the forefinger resting lightly against the front of the trigger and taking up the shack; top of front sight is carefully raised into and held in the line of sight.

How does each rear-rank man aim?

He aims through the interval to the right of his file leader and leans slightly forward to advance the muzzle of his piece beyond the front rank?

What is the position of the elbows in aiming kneeling and sitting?

In aiming kneeling, the left elbow rests on the left knee, point of elbow in front of kneecap. In aiming sitting, the elbows are supported by the knees.

How is the piece aimed lying down?

Raise the piece with both hands; rest on both elbows, and press the butt firmly against the right shoulder.

How is the command FIRE executed?

Press the finger against the trigger; fire without deranging the aim and without lowering or turning the piece; lower the piece in the position of load, and load.

145. What is the command for continuing the fire, and how executed?

1. AIM, 2. Squad, 3. FIRE. Each command is executed as previously explained. **Load** (from magazine) is executed by drawing back and thrusting home the bolt with the right hand, leaving the safety lock at the "ready."

TO FIRE AT WILL.

146. What is the command for firing at will, and how executed?

FIRE AT WILL. Each man, independently of the others, comes to the **ready,** aims carefully and deliberately at the aiming-point or target, fires, loads, and continues the firing until ordered to suspend or cease firing.

147. How does the instructor increase (decrease) the rate of fire and progress?

He shouts: **FASTER** (**SLOWER**).

Digitized by Google

At what rate are men trained to fire at effective ranges and at close ranges?

Three shots per minute at effective ranges, and five or six at close ranges, devoting the minimum of time to loading and the maximum to deliberate aiming.

How are the men habituated to combat conditions and taught the necessity for deliberation?

Small and comparatively indistinct targets are designated.

TO FIRE BY CLIP.

148. What is the command to fire by clip, and how executed?

CLIP FIRE. Executed in the same manner as **fire at will,** except that each man, after having exhausted the cartridges then in the piece, suspends firing.

TO SUSPEND FIRING.

149. What is the command to suspend firing, and how executed?

The instructor blows a long blast of the whistle and repeats same, if necessary, or commands: **SUSPEND FIRING.** Firing stops; pieces are held, loaded and locked, in a position of readiness for instant resumption of firing, rear sights unchanged. The men continue to observe the target or aiming-point or place at which the target disappeared or at which it is expected to reappear. The whistle signal may be used as a preliminary to cease firing.

TO CEASE FIRING.

150. What is the command to cease firing, and how executed?

CEASE FIRING. Firing stops; pieces not already there are brought to the position of load, the cut-off turned down if firing from magazine, the cartridge is drawn or the empty shell ejected, the trigger is pulled, sights are laid down, and the piece is brought to the order.

What is CEASE FIRING used for?

For long pauses, to prepare for changes of position, or to steady the men.

151. When may commands for suspending or ceasing fire be given?

At any time after the preparatory commands for firing, whether the firing has actually commenced or not.

Digitized by Google

THE USE OF COVER.

152. In what should the recruit be given careful instruction?
The individual use of cover.

What must be impressed upon him as to the use of cover?
That, in taking advantage of natural cover, he must be able to fire easily and effectively upon the enemy; if advancing upon the enemy, he must do so steadily and as rapidly as possible; he must conceal himself as much as possible while firing and while advancing.

153. How is he taught to fire easily and effectively and at the same time conceal himself from the view of the enemy?
He is practiced in simulated firing in the prone, sitting, kneeling, and crouching positions, from behind hillocks, trees, heaps of earth or rocks, from depressions, gulleys, ditches, doorways, or windows; he is taught to fire around the right side of his concealment whenever possible, or, when this is not possible, to rise enough to fire over the top of his concealment.

When the recruit understands these details, what is he required to do?
To select cover with reference to an assumed enemy and to place himself behind it in proper position for firing.

154. What evil tendency with regard to cover should be explained to him, and how should he be taught to advance?
The evil tendency of remaining too long in one place, however good the concealment, should be explained. He should be taught to advance from cover to cover, selecting cover in advance before leaving his concealment.

What should be impressed upon him as to furnishing a target for the enemy?
That a man running rapidly toward an enemy furnishes a poor target. He should be trained in springing from a prone position behind concealment, running at top speed to cover and throwing himself behind it; he should also be practiced in advancing from cover to cover by crawling or by lying on the left side, rifle grasped in the right hand, and pushing himself forward with the right leg.

155. When fired on while acting independently, what should he be taught to do?
To drop to the ground, seek cover, and then endeavor to locate his enemy.

Digitized by Google

156. How is the recruit taught to use cover in the combat exercises of the company?

He is taught to use cover, but at the same time he must be taught that the proper advance of the platoon or company and the effectiveness of its fire is of greater importance than the question of cover for individuals; he should also be taught that he may not move about or shift his position in the firing-line, except the better to see the target.

OBSERVATION.

157. What ability is of great importance to the soldier, and how is it cultivated?

The ability to use his eyes accurately. The recruit should be trained in observing his surroundings from positions and when on the march. He should be practiced in pointing out and naming military features of the ground; in distinguishing between living beings; in counting distant groups of objects or beings; in recognizing colors and forms.

158. How should the men be trained in the mechanism of the firing-line?

They should be practiced in repeating to one another target and aiming-point designations and in quickly locating and pointing out the designated target. They should be taught to distinguish, from a prone position, distant objects, particularly troops, both with the naked eye and with field-glasses; similarly, they should be trained in estimating distances.

Digitized by Google

School of the Company.

159. What is the captain responsible for in regard to the theoretical and practical instruction of his officers and non-commissioned officers?

That they must be so instructed not only in the duties of their respective grades, but in those of the next higher grades.

160. How is the company formed in line?

In double rank, with the men arranged, as far as practicable, according to height from right to left, the tallest to the right.

What command effects the original division into squads, and how executed?

COUNT OFF. The squads, successively from the right, count off as in the School of the Squad, corporals placing themselves as No. 4 of the front rank. If the left squad contains less than six men, it is either increased to that number by transfers from other squads or is broken up and its members assigned to other squads and posted in the line of file-closers.

Are these squad organizations maintained?

Yes; by transfers, if necessary, until the company becomes so reduced in numbers as to necessitate a new division into squads. No squad will contain less than six men.

161. How is the company further divided?

Into two, three, or four platoons, each consisting of not less than two nor more than four squads. In garrison or in ceremonies the strength of platoons may exceed four squads.

162. At the formation of the company, how are the platoons or squads numbered?

Consecutively, from right to left, and these designations do not change.

What other designations may be used for convenience in giving commands and for reference, and to what do these designations apply?

Right, center, left, when in line and leading; **center, rear,** when

Digitized by Google

in column, are applied to platoons or squads. These designations apply to the actual right, left, center, head, or rear, in whatever direction the company may be facing. The center squad is the middle or right middle squad of the company. The designation "So-and-So's" squad or platoon may also be used.

163. How are platoons assigned to the lieutenants and non-commissioned officers?

In order of rank as follows: 1, right; 2, left; 3, center (right center); 4, left center. The non-commissioned officers next in rank are assigned as guides, one to each platoon. If sergeants still remain, they are assigned to platoons as additional guides.

When the platoon is deployed, where do its guide or guides go?

They accompany the platoon leader.

Are these assignments changed during battle?

No; vacancies are filled by non-commissioned officers of the platoon or by the nearest available officers or non-commissioned officers arriving with reinforcing troops.

164. Is the first sergeant ever assigned as a guide?

No.

Where is his post when not commanding a platoon?

He is posted as a file-closer opposite the third file from the outer flank of the first platoon.

Where does he go when the company is deployed?

He accompanies the captain.

How is the quartermaster sergeant assigned?

According to his rank as a sergeant.

Where are enlisted men below the grade of sergeant, armed with the rifle, assigned?

In ranks, unless serving as guides.

When not armed with the rifle, where are they posted?

In the line of file-closers.

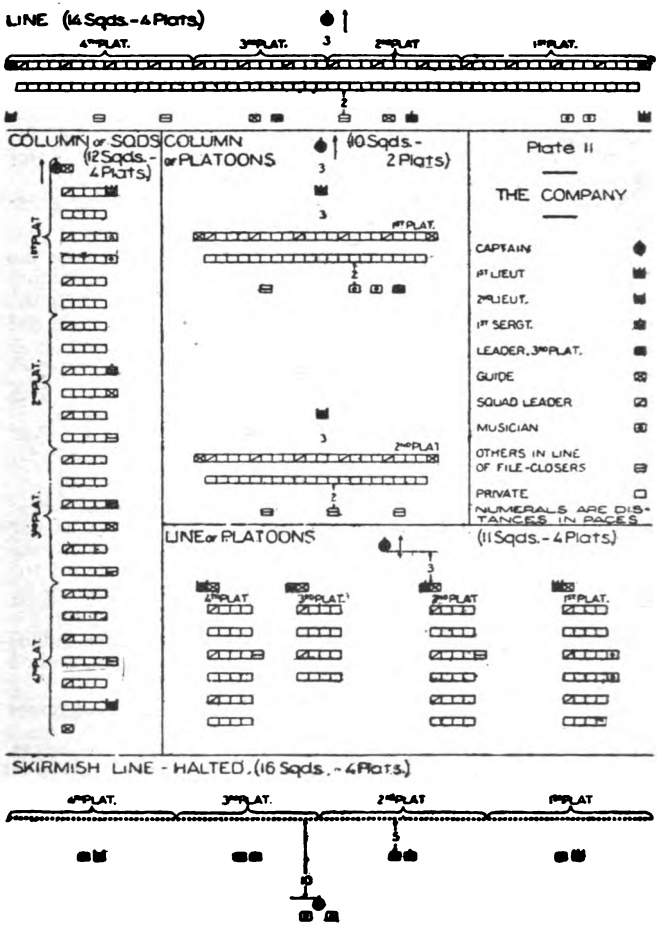
Where are the musicians posted?

When required to play, at the head of the column; when the company is deployed, they accompany the captain.

165. How does the company execute the halt, rests, facings, steps and marchings, manual of arms, loadings and firings, take intervals and distances and assemble, increase and diminish intervals, resume attention, oblique, resume the direct march, preserve alignments, kneel, lie down, rise, stack and take arms?

Digitized by Google

SCHOOL OF THE COMPANY.



Digitized by Google

As explained in the Schools of the Soldier and the Squad, substituting in the commands "company" for "squad."

Does the same rule apply to platoons, detachments, details, etc.?

Yes; substituting their designation for "squad" in the commands.

How do these execute the movements prescribed for the company?

In the same manner, whenever possible, substituting their designation for "company" in the commands.

166. When a company becomes so depleted as to make the division into platoons impracticable, how is it led by the captain?

As a single platoon, but it retains the designation of the company.

What do the lieutenants, first sergeant, and other sergeants do?

The lieutenants and first sergeant assist in fire-control; the other sergeants place themselves in the firing-line as skirmishers.

CLOSE ORDER.

Rules.

167. Which guides are the guides of the company when it is in line or in column of squads, and where are the other guides placed?

The guides of the right and left or leading or rear platoons are the right and left or leading and rear guides, respectively, of the company when it is in line or in column of squads; the other guides are in the line of file-closers.

In platoon movements, where is the post of the platoon guide?

At the head of the platoon if the platoon is in column, and on the guiding flank if in line.

When a platoon has two guides, does their original assignment to flanks change?

No.

168. Where do the guides of a column of squads place themselves?

On the flank opposite the file-closers.

What command of the captain changes the guides and file-closers to the other flank, and how is it executed?

Digitized by Google

File-closers on the left (right) flank, 2. MARCH. The file-closers dart through the column; the captain and guides change.

In column of squads, towards which side does each rank preserve the alignment?

The side of the guide.

169. Do men in the line of file-closers execute the loadings or firings?

No.

Do guides and enlisted men in the line of file-closers execute the manual of arms during drill or ceremonies?

Yes; during the drill, unless specially excused, when they remain at the order. During ceremonies they execute all movements.

170. In taking intervals and distances, where do the right and left guides place themselves, unless otherwise directed?

At the first command, they place themselves in the line of file-closers and with them take a distance of four paces from the rear rank.

In taking intervals, what do the file-closers do at the command MARCH?

Face to the flank and step off with the file nearest them.

In assembling, what do the file-closers and guides do?

Resume their positions in line.

171. In movements executed simultaneously by platoons, what commands do the platoon leaders repeat?

The preparatory commands applicable to their respective platoons.

Do they repeat the command of execution?

No; the command of execution is given by the captain only.

TO FORM THE COMPANY.

172. How is the company formed at the sounding of the assembly?

The first sergeant takes position six paces in front of where the center of the company is to be, faces it, draws saber, and commands: **FALL IN.** The right guide of the company places himself, facing to the front, where the right of the company is to the rest and at such point that the center of the company will be six paces from and opposite the first sergeant; the squads form in their proper places on

Digitized by Google

the left of the right guide, superintended by the other sergeants, who then take their posts. The first sergeant commands: **REPORT.** Remaining in position at the order, the squad leaders, in succession from the right, salute and report: **ALL present,** or **Private(s) ——— absent.** The first sergeant does not return the salutes of the squad leaders. He then commands: **1. Inspection, 2. ARMS; 3. Order, 4. ARMS,** faces about, salutes the captain, reports: **All present or accounted for,** or the names of the authorized absentees, and, without command, takes his post. If the company cannot be formed by squads, the first sergeant commands: **1. Inspection, 2, ARMS; 3. Right shoulder, 4. ARMS,** and calls the roll. Each man, as his name is called, answers, "Here," and executes order arms. The sergeant then effects the division into squads and reports the company as prescribed above. The captain places himself twelve paces in front of the center of and facing the company in time to receive the report of the first sergeant, whose salute he returns, and then draws saber. The lieutenants take their post when the first sergeant has reported, and draw saber with the captain.

173. For the instruction of platoon leaders and guides, how may the company be formed when small?

In single rank.

In this formation, what movements only are executed, and how?

Close-order movements, as explained for the front rank of a company.

TO DISMISS THE COMPANY.

174. Being in line at a halt, how is the company dismissed?

The captain directs the first sergeant: **Dismiss the company.** The officers fall out; the first sergeant places himself, faced to the front, three paces to the front and two paces from the nearest flank of the company, salutes, faces toward opposite flank of the company, and commands: **1. Inspection, 2. ARMS; 3. Port, 4. ARMS; 5. DISMISSED.**

ALIGNMENTS.

175. How are the alignments executed?

As prescribed in the School of the Squad, the guide being established instead of the flank file. The rear-rank man of the flank file keeps his head and eyes to the front and covers his file leader.

What does the captain do at each alignment?

Digitized by Google

He places himself in prolongation of the line, two paces from and facing the flank toward which the dress is made, verifies the alignment, and commands: **FRONT.**

What do the platoon leaders do when required to verify alignments?

They take a like position.

MOVEMENTS ON THE FIXED PIVOT.

176. Being in line, what is the command to turn on the fixed pivot, and how executed?

1. Company right (left), 2. MARCH; 3. Company, 4. HALT; or, 3. Forward, 4. MARCH. At the second command, the right-flank man in the front rank faces to the right in marching and marks time; the other front-rank men oblique to the right, place themselves abreast of the pivot, and mark time; in the rear rank the third man from the right, followed in column by the second and first, moves straight to the front until in rear of his front-rank man, when all face to the right in marching and mark time; the remaining men of the rear rank move straight to the front four paces, oblique to the right, place themselves abreast of the third man, cover their file leaders, and mark time; the right guide steps back, takes post on the flank, and marks time. The fourth command is given when the last man is one pace in rear of the new line.

When may the command HALT be given, and how executed?

At any time after the movement begins; only those halt who are in the new position. Each of the others halts upon arriving on the line, aligns himself to the right, and executes **front** without command.

177. Being in line, what is the command to form column of platoons or the reverse, and how executed?

1. Platoons right (left), 2. MARCH; 3. Company, 4. HALT; or, 3. Forward, 4. MARCH. Executed by each platoon as described for the company.

Before forming line, what precaution does the captain take, and how?

He sees that the guides on the flank toward which the movement is to be executed are covering; this is effected by previously announcing the guide to that flank.

Digitized by Google

178. Being in line, what is the command to form column of squads or the reverse; or, being in line of platoons, what is the command to form column of platoons or the reverse, and how executed?

1. Squads right (left), 2. MARCH; or, **1. Squads right (left), 2. MARCH; 3. Company, 4. HALT.** Executed by each squad, as described in the School of the Squad. If the company or platoons be formed in line toward the side of the file-closers, they dart through the column and take posts in rear of the company at the second command. If the column of squads be formed from line, the file-closers take posts on the pivot flank, abreast of and four inches from the nearest rank.

MOVEMENTS ON THE MOVING PIVOT.

179. Being in line, what is the command to change direction, and how executed?

1. Right (Left) turn, 2. MARCH; 3. Forward, 4. MARCH. Executed as described in the School of the Squad, except that the men do not glance toward the marching flank and that all take full step at the fourth command. The right guide is the pivot of the front rank. Each rear-rank man obliques on the same ground as his file leader.

180. Being in column of platoons, what is the command to change direction, and how is it executed?

1. Column right (left), 2. MARCH. At the first command, the leader of the leading platoon commands: **RIGHT TURN.** At the command **March,** the leading platoon turns to the right on moving pivots; its leader commands: **1. Forward, 2. MARCH,** on completion of the turn. Rear platoons march squarely up to the turning-point of the leading platoon and turn at command of their leaders.

181. Being in column of squads, what is the command to change direction, and how executed?

1. Column right (left), 2. MARCH. At the second command, the front rank of the leading squad turns to the right on moving pivot as in the School of the Squad; the other ranks, without command, turn successively on the same ground and in a similar manner.

Digitized by Google

182. Being in column of squads, what is the command to form line of platoons or the reverse, and how executed?

1. Platoons, column right (left), 2. MARCH. Executed by each platoon as described for the company.

183. Being in line, what is the command to form column of squads and change direction, and how executed?

1. Squads right (left), column right (left), 2. MARCH; or, **1. Right (Left), by squads, 2. MARCH.** In the first case, the right squad initiates the **column right** as soon as it has completed the **squad right;** in the second case, at the command **March,** the right squad marches forward; the remainder of the company executes **squads right, column left,** and follows the right squad. The right guide, when he has posted himself in front of the right squad, takes four short steps, then resumes the full step; the right squad conforms.

184. Being in line, what is the command to form line of platoons, and how executed?

1. Squads right (left), platoons, column right (left), 2. MARCH; or, **1. Platoons, right (left), by squads, 2. MARCH.** Executed by each platoon as described for the company in the preceding paragraph.

FACING OR MARCHING TO THE REAR.

185. Being in line, line of platoons, or in column of platoons or squads, what is the command to face or march to the rear, and how executed?

1. Squads right (left) about, 2. MARCH; or, **1. Squads right (left) about, 2. MARCH; 3. Company, 4. HALT.** Executed by each squad as described in the School of the Squad. If the company or platoons be in column of squads, the file-closers turn about toward the column, and take their posts; if in line, each darts through the nearest interval between squads.

186. What is the command to march to the rear for a few paces, and how executed?

1. About, 2. FACE; 3. Forward, 4. MARCH. If in line, the guides place themselves in the rear rank, now the front rank; the file-closers, on facing about, maintain their relative positions. No other movement is executed until the line is faced to the original front.

Digitized by Google

ON RIGHT (LEFT) INTO LINE.

187. Being in column of platoons or squads, what is the command to form line on right or left, and how executed?

1. On right (left) into line, 2. MARCH; 3. Company, 4. HALT; 5. FRONT. At the first command, the leader of the leading unit commands: **Right turn.** The leaders of the other units command: **Forward,** if at a halt. At the second command, the leading unit turns to right on moving pivot. The command **Halt** is given when the leading unit has advanced the desired distance in the new direction; it halts; its leader then commands: **Right dress.** The units in rear continue to march straight to the front; each, when opposite the right of its place in line, executes **right turn** at the command of its leader; each is halted on the line at the command of its leader, who then commands: **Right dress.** All dress on the first unit in the line. If executed in double time, the leading squad marches in double time till halted.

FRONT INTO LINE.

188. Being in column of platoons or squads, what is the command to form line to the front, and how executed?

1. Right (left) front into line, 2. MARCH; 3. Company, 4. HALT; 5. FRONT. At the first command, the leaders of the units in rear of the leading one command: **Right oblique;** if at a halt, the leader of the leading unit commands: **Forward.** At the second command, the leading unit moves straight forward; the rear units oblique as indicated. The command **Halt** is given when the leading unit has advanced the desired distance; it halts; its leader then commands: **Left dress.** Each of the rear units, when opposite its place in line, resumes the original direction at the command of its leader, who then commands: **Left dress.** All dress on the first unit in line.

189. Being in column of squads, what is the command to form column of companies; or, being in line of platoons, what is the command to form the company in line, and how executed?

1. Platoons, right (left) front into line, 2. MARCH; 3. Company, 4. HALT; 5. FRONT. Executed by each platoon as described for the company. In forming the company in line the dress is on the left squad of the left platoon. If forming column of platoons, platoon leaders verify the alignments before taking their posts. The

Digitized by Google

captain commands **Front** when the alignments have been verified.

When front into line is executed in double time, how do the commands and execution differ?

The commands for halting and aligning are omitted, and the guide is toward the side of the first unit in line.

AT EASE AND ROUTE STEP.

190. What is the habitual column of route?

The column of squads.

Are route step and at ease applicable to any marching formation?

Yes.

191. What is the command to march at route step, and how executed?

1. Route step, 2. MARCH. Sabers are carried at will or in the scabbard; the men carry their pieces at will, keeping the muzzles elevated; they are not required to preserve silence nor to keep the step. The ranks cover and preserve their distance. If halted from route step, the men stand at rest.

192. What is the command to march at ease, and how executed?

1. At ease, 2. MARCH. The company marches as in route step, except that silence is preserved; when halted, the men remain at ease.

193. Marching at route step or at ease, what is the command for bringing the company to attention, and how executed?

1. Company, 2. ATTENTION. At the command **Attention,** the pieces are brought to the right shoulder and the cadenced step in quick time is resumed.

TO DIMINISH THE FRONT OF A COLUMN OF SQUADS.

194. Being in column of squads, what is the command to form column of twos, and how executed?

1. Right (Left) by twos, 2. MARCH. At the command **March,** all files except the two right files of the leading squad execute in place, the two left files of the leading squad oblique to the right when disengaged and follow the right files at the shortest practicable distance. The remaining squads follow successively in like manner.

Digitized by Google

195. Being in column of squads or twos, what is the command to form column of files, and how executed?

1. Right (Left) by file, 2. MARCH. At the command **March,** all files execute in place except the right file of the leading two or squad; the left file or files of the leading two or squad oblique successively to the right when disengaged, and each follows the file on its right at the shortest practicable distance. The remaining twos or squads follow successively in like manner.

196. Being in column of files or twos, what is the command to form column of squads; or, being in column of files, what is the command to form column of twos, and how executed?

1. Squads (Twos), right (left) front into line, 2. MARCH. At the command **March,** the leading file or files halt. The remainder of the squad or two obliques to the right and halts on line with the leading file or files. The remaining squads or twos close up and successively form in rear of the first in like manner.

How will the movement described in this paragraph be ordered?

Right or left, so as to restore the files to their normal relative positions in the two or squad.

197. What is the nature of the movements prescribed in the three preceding paragraphs?

They are difficult of execution at attention and have no value as disciplinary exercises.

198. What is the objection to marching by twos or files?

They cannot be executed without serious delay and waste of road space. Every reasonable precaution will be taken to obviate the necessity for these formations.

EXTENDED ORDER.

Rules for Deployment.

199. What does the command GUIDE RIGHT (LEFT or CENTER) indicate?

It indicates the base squad for the deployment; if in line, it designates the actual right (left or center) squad; if in column, the command **Guide right** (**left**) designates the leading squad, and the command **Guide center** designates the center squad

After the deployment is completed, where is the guide?

It is center without command, unless otherwise ordered.

Digitized by Google

200. What do the squad leaders do at the preparatory command for forming skirmish-line, from either column of squads or line?

Each squad leader (except the leader of the base squad, when his squad does not advance) cautions his squad, **Follow me,** or **By the right** (left) **flank,** as the case may be; at the command **March,** he steps in front of his squad and leads it to its place in line.

201. Having given the command for forming skirmish-line, what indication does the captain give, if necessary, to the corporal of the base squad?

He indicates the point on which the squad is to march; the corporal habitually looks to the captain for such directions.

202. When and how are the squads deployed?

The base squad is deployed as soon as it has sufficient interval. The other squads are deployed as they arrive on the general line; each corporal halts in his place in line and commands or signals, as skirmishers. The squad deploys and halts abreast of him.

May the squad be deployed before arriving on the line?

Yes; if tactical considerations demand it.

203. Do deployed lines preserve alignment?

Yes; a general alignment toward the guide.

How do individuals or units march within their respective fronts?

So as best to secure cover or to facilitate the advance; but the general and orderly progress of the whole is paramount.

What does a deployed line do on halting?

Faces to the front (direction of the enemy) in all cases and takes advantage of cover, the men lying down if necessary.

204. How does the company in skirmish-line advance, halt, move by the flank or to the rear, oblique, resume the direct march, pass from quick to double time and the reverse?

By the same commands and in a similar manner as in close order.

If at a halt, how is the movement by the flank or to the rear executed?

By the same commands as when marching.

How is the command COMPANY RIGHT (LEFT, HALF RIGHT, HALF LEFT) executed?

Digitized by Google

As explained for the front rank, skirmish intervals being maintained.

205. How is a platoon or other part of the company deployed and marched?

In the same manner as the company, substituting in the commands "platoon" ("detachment," etc.), for "company."

DEPLOYMENTS.

206. Being in line, what is the command to form skirmish-lines to the front, and how executed?

1. As skirmishers, guide right (left or center), **2. MARCH.** If marching, the corporal of the base squad moves straight to the front; when that squad has advanced the desired distance, the captain commands: **1. Company, 2. HALT.** If the guide be right (left), the other corporals move to the left (right) front and, in succession from the base, place their squads on the line. If the guide be center, the other corporals move to the right or left front, according as they are on the right or left of the center squad, and in succession from the center squad place their squads on the line. If at a halt, the base squad is deployed without advancing; the other squads may be conducted to their proper places by the flank; interior squads may be moved when squads more distant from the base have gained comfortable marching distance.

207. Being in column of squads, what is the command to form skirmish-lines to the front, and how executed?

1. As skirmishers, guide right (left or center), **2. MARCH.** If marching, the corporal of the base squad deploys it and moves straight to the front; if at a halt, he deploys his squad without advancing. If the guide be right (left), the other corporals move to the left (right) front and, in succession from the base, place their squads on the line; if the guide be center, the corporals in front of the center squad move to the right (if at a halt, to the right rear), the corporals in rear of the center squad move to the left front, and each, in succession from the base, places his squad on the line.

How is the column of twos or files deployed?

By the same commands and in like manner.

208. May the company, in line or column of squads, be deployed in an oblique direction, and if so, how?

Yes; by the same commands. The captain points out the

Digitized by Google

desired direction; the corporal of the base squad moves in the direction indicated; the other corporals conform.

209. How is the skirmish-line formed to the flank or rear?

The column of squads is turned by squads to the flank or rear and then deployed as described.

210. How are the intervals between men in the skirmish-line increased or decreased?

As described in the School of the Squad, adding to the preparatory command, **Guide right (left or center)**, if necessary.

THE ASSEMBLY.

211. What is the command for assembling, and how executed?

The captain takes his post in front of, or designates, the element on which the company is to assemble and commands: **1. Assemble, 2. MARCH.** If in skirmish-line, the men move toward the designated point promptly, and the company is re-formed in line; if assembled by platoons, these are conducted to the designated point by platoon leaders, and the company is re-formed in line.

What is the command for assembling by platoons, and how executed?

1. Platoons assemble, 2. MARCH. Executed by each platoon as described for the company.

What is the command for assembling one or more platoons, and how executed?

1. Such platoon(s) assemble, 2. MARCH. Executed by the designated platoon or platoons as described for the company.

THE ADVANCE.

212. How is the advance of a company into an engagement (whether for attack or defense) conducted?

In close order, preferably column of squads, until the probability of encountering hostile fire makes it advisable to deploy. After deployment and before opening fire, the advance of the company may be continued in skirmish-line or other suitable formation—depending upon circumstances.

What is the purpose of employing platoon or squad columns or using a succession of thin lines for advancing?

Digitized by Google

To facilitate the advance; the better to take advantage of cover or to reduce losses.

Who selects the method to be used, and upon what does the choice depend?

The captain or major makes the selection, which depends upon conditions arising during the advance.

If the deployment is found to be premature, what is done?

It will generally be best to assemble the company and proceed in close order.

What are patrols used for?

To provide the necessary guard against surprise.

213. Being in skirmish-line, what is the command to form platoon columns, and how executed?

1. Platoon columns, 2. MARCH. The platoon leaders move forward through the center of their respective platoons; men to the right of the platoon leader march to the left and follow him in file; those to the left march in like manner to the right; each platoon leader thus conducts the march of his platoon in double column of files; platoon guides follow in rear of their respective platoons to insure prompt and orderly execution of the advance.

214. Being in skirmish-line, what is the command to form squad columns, and how executed?

1. Squad columns, 2. MARCH. Each squad leader moves to the front; the members of each squad oblique toward and follow their squad leader in single file at easy marching distances.

215. Under what conditions are platoon and squad columns valuable, and how should they be used?

Platoon columns are profitably used where the ground is so difficult or cover so limited as to make it desirable to take advantage of the few favorable routes; no two platoons should march within the area of burst of a single shrapnel (ordinarily, about twenty yards wide). Squad columns are principally of value in facilitating the advance over rough or brush-grown ground; they afford no material advantages in securing cover.

216. What is the command to deploy platoon or squad columns, and how executed?

1. As skirmishers, 2. MARCH. Skirmishers move to the right or left front and successively place themselves in their original positions on the line.

Digitized by Google

217. Being in platoon or squad columns, what is the command to assemble, and how executed?

1. Assemble, 2. MARCH. The platoon or squad leaders signal Assemble; the men of each platoon or squad, as the case may be, advance and, moving to the right and left, take their proper places in line, each unit assembling on the leading element of the column and re-forming in line. The platoon or squad leaders conduct their units toward the element or point indicated by the captain and to their places in line; the company is re-formed in line.

218. Being in skirmish-line, what is the command to advance by a succession of thin lines, and how executed?

1. (Such numbers) forward, 2. MARCH. The captain points out in advance the selected position in front of the line occupied. The designated number of each squad moves to the front; the line thus formed preserves the original intervals as nearly as practicable; when this line has advanced a suitable distance (generally from 100 to 250 yards, depending upon the terrain and the character of the hostile fire), a second is sent forward by similar commands, and so on at irregular distances until the whole line has advanced. Upon arriving at the indicated position, the first line is halted; successive lines, upon arriving, halt on line with the first, and the men take their proper places in the skirmish-line.

How are the lines made up, and who commands them?

They are made up of one man per squad, and the men of a squad are sent forward in order from right to left as deployed. The first line is led by the platoon leader of the right platoon, the second by the guide of the right platoon, and so on in order from right to left.

What is the cadence of the advance?

Quick time, unless conditions demand a faster gait.

219. What is the advance in a succession of thin lines used for?

To cross a wide stretch swept or likely to be swept by artillery fire or heavy long-range rifle fire, which cannot profitably be returned. Its purpose is the building up of a strong skirmish-line preparatory to engaging in a fire fight.

What are the advantages and disadvantages of this method of advancing?

Its advantage lies in the fact that it offers a less definite target,

Digitized by Google

hence is less likely to draw fire; but it results in serious (though temporary) loss of control over the company.

220. Are the above methods the only authorized means of advancing?

No; they are suggestions. Other and better formations may be devised to fit particular cases. The best formation is the one which advances the line farthest with the least loss of men, time, and control.

THE FIRE ATTACK.

221. When it becomes impracticable for the company to advance as a whole by ordinary means, what does it do?

Advances by rushes.

222. Being in skirmish-line, what is the command for advancing by rushes, and how executed?

1. By platoon (two platoons, squad, four men, etc.), from the right (left), 2. RUSH. The platoon leader on the indicated flank carefully arranges the details for a prompt and vigorous execution of the rush and puts it into effect as soon as practicable. If necessary, he designates the leader for the indicated fraction. When about to rush, he causes the men of the fraction to cease firing and to hold themselves flat, but in readiness to spring forward instantly. The leader of the rush (at the signal of the platoon leader, if the latter be not the leader of the rush) commands: **FOLLOW ME,** and, running at top speed, leads the fraction to the new line, where he halts it and causes it to open fire. The leader of the rush selects the new line, if it has not been previously designated. The first fraction having established itself on the new line, the next like fraction is sent forward by its platoon leader without further command from the captain, and so on successively until the entire company is on the line established by the first rush. If more than one platoon is to join in one rush, the junior platoon leader conforms to the action of the senior. A part of the line having advanced, the captain may increase or decrease the size of the fractions to complete the movement.

223. Does the company execute the advance by rushes?

Yes; when the company forms a part of the firing-line. It is conducted by the captain as described for a platoon in the preceding paragraph. The captain leads the rush; platoon leaders lead their respective platoons; platoon guides follow the line to insure prompt and orderly execution of the advance.

Digitized by Google

224. When the foregoing method of advancing by running becomes impracticable, what is done?

Any method of advance that brings the attack closer to the enemy, such as crawling, should be employed.

THE COMPANY IN SUPPORT.

225. What does the support do in order to enable it to follow or reach the firing-line?

It adopts suitable formations, following the principles explained in paragraphs 212–218.

How should the support be conducted?

The support should be kept assembled as long as practicable. If, after deploying, a favorable opportunity arises to hold it for some time in close formation, it should be re-assembled; it is redeployed when necessary.

226. Who controls the movements of support and the dispatch of reinforcements from it to the firing-line?

The major.

What sized reinforcement should be avoided, and why?

A reinforcement of less than one platoon, because it has little influence.

What does the captain of a company in support constantly look out for?

He keeps constantly on the alert for the major's signals or commands.

227. How does a reinforcement sent to the firing-line conduct itself?

It joins it deployed as skirmishers. The leader of the reinforcement places it in an interval in the line, if one exists, and commands it thereafter as a unit. If no such suitable interval exists, the reinforcement is advanced with increased intervals between skirmishers; each man occupies the nearest interval in the firing-line, and each then obeys the order of the nearest squad leader and platoon leader.

228. At what speed does the reinforcement join the firing-line?

As quickly as possible without exhausting the men.

229. How should the original platoon division of the companies be treated in the firing-line?

Digitized by Google

It should be maintained and not broken up by the mingling of reinforcements.

Upon joining the firing-line, what do officers and sergeants accompanying a reinforcement do?

They take over the duties of others of like grade who have been disabled or distribute themselves so as best to exercise their normal function. Conditions will vary, and no rules can be prescribed. It is essential that all assist in mastering the increasing difficulties of control.

THE COMPANY ACTING ALONE.

230. In general, how is the company employed when acting alone?

According to the principles applicable to the battalion acting alone. The captain employs platoons as the major employs companies, making due allowance for the difference in strength. The support may be smaller in proportion or may be dispensed with.

231. What must the company be well protected against, and how?

Surprise. Combat patrols on the flanks are especially important. Each leader of a flank platoon details a man to watch for the signals of the patrol or patrols on his flank.

FIRE.

232. Ordinarily, what is done before the company deploys for combat?

Pieces are loaded and extra ammunition is issued.

In close order, how does the company execute the firings?

At the command of the captain, who posts himself in rear of center of the company.

What do the firings in close order usually consist of?

Saluting volleys only.

233. When the company is deployed, how does it execute the firings?

The men execute the firings at the command of their platoon leaders; the latter gives such commands as are necessary to carry out the captain's directions, and, from time to time, add such further commands as are necessary to continue, correct, and control the fire ordered.

Digitized by Google

234. What is generally necessary to replace the voice in giving commands during fire?

Signals of such character that proper fire-direction and control is assured.

What is necessary to attract attention before the signals are given?

The whistle signal (short blast).

When a fraction of the firing-line is about to rush, what signals should be avoided, if practicable?

The long-blast signal as an aid to cease firing.

Since officers and men behind the firing-line cannot ordinarily move freely along the line, what must they depend upon?

Mutual watchfulness and the proper use of the prescribed signals. All should post themselves so as to see their immediate superiors and subordinates.

235. How do the musicians assist the captain?

By observing the enemy, the target, and the fire effect, by transmitting commands or signals, and by watching for signals.

236. What firing with blank cartridges is prohibited?

Firing at an outlined or represented enemy at distances less than one hundred yards.

237. Where is the effect of fire and the influence of the ground in relation thereto, and the individual and collective instruction in marksmanship, treated?

In the Small-Arms Firing Manual.

RANGES.

238. For convenience of reference, how are ranges classified?

0 to 600 yards, close range.
600 to 1,200 yards, effective range.
1,200 to 2,000 yards, long range.
2,000 yards and over, distant range.

239. What must be done in regard to estimating the distance to the target and setting the sights?

The distance must be determined as accurately as possible and the sights set accordingly.

Digitized by Google

What is the most important single factor in securing effective fire at the longer ranges?

Aside from training and morale, an accurate determination of the range and careful setting of the sights.

240. Except in a deliberately prepared defensive position, what is the most and generally the only practicable method of determining the range?

To take the mean of several estimates.

What steps are taken in preparation for the necessity of estimating the range?

Five or six officers or men selected from the most accurate estimators in the company are designated as "range-finders" and are specially trained in estimating distances.

How are the range-finders used?

Whenever necessary and practicable, the captain assembles the range-finders, points out the target to them, and adopts the mean of their estimates. The range-finders then take their customary posts.

CLASSES OF FIRING.

241, 242, 243. State the three classes of fire and describe their use.

Volley fire has limited application. In defense, it may be used in the early stages of the action, if the enemy presents a large, compact target; it may be used by troops executing fire of position. When the ground near the target is such that the strike of bullets can be seen from the firing-line, ranging volleys may be used to correct the sight-setting. In combat, volley fire is executed habitually by platoon.

Fire at will is the class of fire normally employed in attack or defense.

Clip fire has limited application; it is principally used: 1° in the early stages of the combat, to steady the men by habituating them to brief pauses in firing; 2° to produce a short burst of fire.

THE TARGET.

244. How is the target assigned?

Ordinarily the major will assign an objective in attack, or a

Digitized by Google

sector in defense, to the company; its target will lie within the limits so assigned.

What governs the choice of targets?

Tactical considerations are paramount; the nearest hostile troops within the objective or sector will thus be the usual target; this will usually be the hostile firing-line; troops in rear are ordinarily proper targets for artillery, machine guns, or, at times, infantry employing fire of position.

Should a change be made in the target?

Not without excellent reasons therefor, such as the sudden appearance of hostile troops under conditions which make them more to be feared than the troops comprising the former target.

245. What is of special importance in firing?

A distribution of the fire over the entire target.

How is this attained?

The captain allots a part of the target to each platoon or each platoon leader takes as his target that part which corresponds to his position in the company. Men are so instructed that each fires on that part of the target which is directly opposite him.

246. Are all parts of the target of equal importance?

Yes. Care must be exercised that the men do not slight its less visible parts.

What does a section of the target not covered by fire represent?

A number of the enemy permitted to fire coolly and effectively.

247. If the target cannot be seen with the naked eye, what do the platoon leaders do?

Select an object in front of or behind it, designate this as the aiming-point, and direct a sight-setting which will carry the cone of fire into the target.

FIRE-DIRECTION.

248. Is it practicable for the captain to command the company directly in combat?

Not when the company is large enough to be divided into platoons.

What is the measure of his efficiency in managing the firing-line?

His ability to enforce his will through the platoon leaders.

What is the limit of his command over the firing-line?

Digitized by Google

Having indicated clearly what he desires the platoon leaders to do, he avoids interfering, except to correct serious errors or omissions.

249. What are the captain's duties during the fire-action, and how does he influence it?

He directs the fire of the company or designated platoons. He designates the target, and, when practicable, allots a part of the target to each platoon. Before beginning the fire-action, he determines the range, announces the sight-setting, and indicates the class of fire to be employed and the time to open fire. Thereafter he observes the effect of the fire, corrects material errors in sight-setting, prevents exhaustion of the ammunition supply, and causes the distribution of such extra ammunition as may be received from the rear.

FIRE-CONTROL.

250. In combat, what is the fire unit?

The platoon.

How many rifles can one leader effectively control?

From twenty to thirty-five.

251. How are the commands or directions of the captain put into execution?

Each platoon leader puts them into execution, having first taken such precautions to insure correct sight-setting and clear description of the target or aiming-point as the situation permits or requires; thereafter he gives such additional commands or directions as are necessary to exact compliance with the captain's will. He corrects the sight-setting when necessary; he designates an aiming-point when the target cannot be seen with the naked eye.

252. In general, what are the duties in fire-control of (a) platoon leaders, (b) platoon guides, (c) squad leaders?

(a) Platoon leaders observe the target and the effect of their fire, and are on the alert for the captain's commands or signals; they observe and regulate the rate of fire; (b) platoon guides watch the firing-line and check every breach of fire-discipline; (c) squad leaders transmit commands and signals when necessary, observe the conduct of their squads, and abate excitement, assist in enforcing fire-discipline, and participate in the firing.

253. How are the best troops distinguished in regard to their firing?

They submit longest to fire-control.

Digitized by Google

What evil does the loss of control over the firing entail?
It robs success of its greatest results.

What should be the constant aim of all?
To avoid or delay the loss of fire-control.

What does the term "fire-control" imply?
The ability to stop firing, change the sight-setting and target, and resume a well-directed fire.

FIRE-DISCIPLINE.

254. What does the term "fire-discipline" imply and embrace?
It implies a habit of obedience and a control of the rifle by the soldier, the result of training, which will enable him in action to make hits instead of misses. It embraces taking advantage of the ground; care in setting the sights and delivery of fire; constant attention to the orders of the leaders, and careful observation of the enemy; an increase of fire when the target is favorable, and a cessation of fire when the enemy disappears; economy of ammunition. (Quoted from Small-Arms Firing Manual.)

In combat, what shots have the approximate value of hits?
Those which graze the enemy's trench or position, and thus reduce the effectiveness of his fire.

What shots contribute to fire-superiority?
Those described above, and actual hits only.

What further implication is contained in the term "fire-discipline"?
That, in a firing-line without leaders, each man retains his presence of mind and directs effective fire upon the proper target.

255. How is a correct appreciation of the requirements of fire-discipline created?
The men are taught that the rate of fire should be as rapid as is consistent with accurate aiming; that the rate will depend upon the visibility, proximity, and size of the target; and that the proper rate will ordinarily suggest itself to each trained man, usually rendering cautions or commands unnecessary.

At what points in the attack is the highest rate of fire employed?
At the halt preceding the assault, and in pursuing fire.

256. In an advance by rushes, what are leaders of troops in firing positions responsible for, and what are the troops trained to do?

Digitized by Google

For the delivery of heavy fire to cover the advance of each rushing fraction. The troops are trained to change slightly the direction of fire, so as not to endanger the flanks of advanced portions of the firing-line.

257. In defense, when the target disappears behind cover, what do the platoon leaders do?

Suspend fire, prepare their platoons to fire upon the point where it is expected to reappear, and greet its reappearance instantly with vigorous fire.

Digitized by Google

School of the Battalion.

258. What kind of a unit is the battalion?

Purely a tactical unit.

What are the duties of the major?

Primarily, those of an instructor in drill and tactics and of a tactical commander.

What is he responsible for?

The theoretical and practical training of the battalion. He supervises the training of the companies of the battalion, with a view to insuring the thoroughness and uniformity of their instruction.

In the instruction of the battalion as a whole, what will his efforts be chiefly directed toward?

The development of tactical efficiency, devoting only such time to the mechanism of drill and to the ceremonies as may be necessary in order to insure precision, smartness, and proper control.

259. Upon what basis are the movements explained in drill regulations made?

A battalion of four companies, but they may be executed by a battalion of two or more companies—not exceeding six.

260. How are the companies generally arranged?

From right to left, according to the rank of the captains present at the formations.

Upon whose authority may the arrangement of companies be varied?

That of the major or higher commander.

After the battalion is formed, is cognizance taken of the relative order of the companies?

No.

261. How are the companies designated numerically?

"First Company," "Second Company," etc., from right to left in line and from head to rear in column, in whatever direction the battalion faces.

To what do the terms "right" and "left" apply?

To actual right and left as the line faces. If the about by squads be executed when in line, the right company becomes the left company, and the right center becomes the left center company.

Digitized by Google

What does the designation "center company" indicate?

The right center or the actual center company, according as the number of companies is even or odd.

262. Where do the band and other special units take post when attached to the battalion?

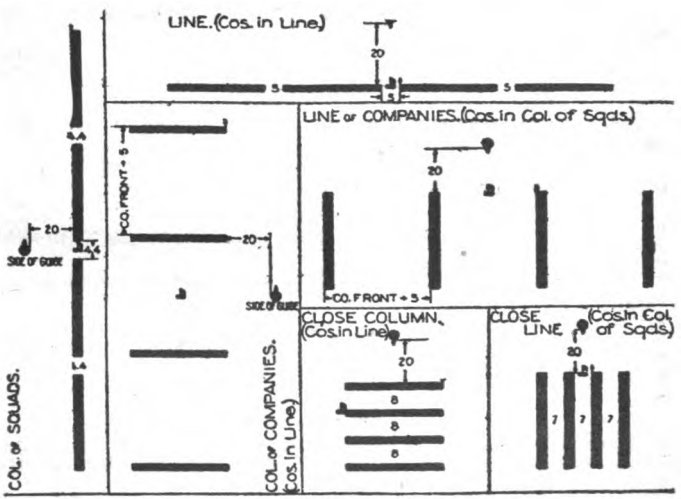
They take the same post with respect to it as if it were the nearest battalion shown in Plate 4.

CLOSE ORDER.

RULES.

263. What commands do the captains repeat?

Such preparatory commands as are to be immediately executed by their companies, as **Forward, Squads right,** etc.



THE BATTALION.

Plate III. MAJOR (WITH STAFF ETC.)- GUIDE AND DIRECTION- THE COLOR-

NUMERALS ARE DISTANCES OR INTERVALS IN PACES.

Digitized by Google

When do the men execute the commands March, Halt, etc.?
If applying to their companies, when given by the major.

In what movements do the captains repeat the command of execution?
Those executed in route step or at ease, if necessary.

What commands of the major do the captains not repeat?
Those in executing the manual of arms and those which are not essential to the execution of a movement by their companies, as **Column of squads, First company, Squads right,** etc.

In giving commands or cautions, how may captains distinguish their company?
By prefixing the proper letter designations of their companies, as: **A Company, HALT; B Company, SQUADS RIGHT,** etc.

264. At the command GUIDE CENTER (right or left), what do the captains command?
Guide right or left, according to the positions of their companies.

What does the command GUIDE CENTER designate?
The left guide of the center company.

265. When the companies are to be dressed, on what flank and how do the captains place themselves?
(a) When the battalion is in line—on that flank toward which the dress is to be made, beside the guide (or the flank file of the front rank, if the guide is not in line), and facing to the front; (b) when the battalion is in column of companies—on that flank toward which the dress is to be made, two paces from the guide, in prolongation of and facing down the line.

What does each captain do after dressing his company?
Commands, **Front,** and takes his post.

When the battalion is in line, what does the guide on the flank away from the point of rest do, unless otherwise prescribed, at the captain's command, DRESS, or at the command HALT, when it is prescribed that the company shall dress?
With his piece at right shoulder, he dresses promptly on the captain and the companies beyond. During the dress he moves, if necessary, to the right and left only; the captain dresses the company on the line thus established.

When does the guide take the position of order arms?
At the command **Front.**

Digitized by Google

266. What movements are executed by the battalion as explained in the Schools of the Soldier and Squad, and how?

The halt, rests, facings, steps and marchings, manual of arms, resumes attention, kneels, lies down, rises, stacks and takes arms, substituting in the commands "battalion" for "squad."

267. What movements are executed by the battalion as explained in the School of the Company?

Squads right (left) squads right (left) about, route step and at ease, and obliques and resumes the direct march.

Also the battalions in column of platoons, twos, or files changes direction, and in column of squads forms column of twos or files and re-forms column of twos or squads, as explained in the School of the Company.

268. When the formation admits of the simultaneous execution by companies or platoons of movements in the School of the Company, how may the major cause such movements to be executed?

By prefixing, when necessary, **Companies** (Platoons) to the commands prescribed therein, as: **1. Companies, right front into line, 2. MARCH.**

How are such simultaneous movements completed?

The commands **Halt** or **March,** if prescribed, are given by the major; the command **Front,** when prescribed, is given by the captains.

269. Does the battalion, as a unit, execute the loadings and firings?

Only in firing saluting volleys.

What are the commands?

As for the company, substituting **battalion** for **company.**

Where do the captains take post at the first command for loading, and where do they go at the conclusion of the firing?

They take post in rear of the center of their respective companies.

At the conclusion of the firing, the captains resume their post in line.

On other occasions, when firing in close order is necessary, how is it executed?

By company or other subdivision, under instructions from the major.

Digitized by Google

TO FORM THE BATTALION.

270. For purposes other than ceremonies, in what formation is the battalion formed, and how?

In column of squads. The companies having been formed, the adjutant posts himself so as to be facing the column when formed and six paces in front of the place to be occupied by the leading guide of the battalion; he draws saber; adjutant's call is sounded or the adjutant signals **assemble.**

The companies are formed at attention in column of squads in their proper order. Each captain, after halting his company, salutes the adjutant; the adjutant returns the salute, and, when the last captain has saluted, faces the major, and reports: "Sir, the battalion is formed." He then joins the major.

271. When is the battalion formed in line?

For ceremonies or when directed.

Describe the formation of the battalion in line?

The companies having been formed, the adjutant posts himself so as to be six paces to the right of the right company when the line is formed, and faces in the direction in which the line is to extend. He draws saber; **adjutant's call** is sounded; the band plays, if present. The company is conducted by its captain so as to arrive from the rear, parallel to the line; its right and left guides precede it on the line by about twenty paces, taking post facing to the right at **order arms,** so that their elbows will be against the breasts of the right and left files of their company when it is dressed. The guides of the other companies successively prolong the line to the left in like manner, and the companies approach their respective places in line as explained for the right company. The adjutant, from his post, causes the guides to cover. When about one pace in rear of the line, each company is halted and dressed to the right against the arms of the guides. The band, arriving from the rear, takes its place in line when the right company is halted; it ceases playing when the left company has halted. When the guides of the left company have been posted, the adjutant, moving by the shortest route, takes post facing the battalion midway between the post of the major and the center of the battalion. The major, staff, non-commissioned staff, and orderlies take their posts. When all parts of the line have been dressed, and officers and others have reached their posts, the adjutant commands: **1. Guides, 2. POSTS; 3.**

Digitized by Google

Present, 4. ARMS. At the second command guides take their places in the line. The adjutant then turns about and reports to the major: "Sir, the battalion is formed." The major directs the adjutant: "Take your post, sir," draws saber, and brings the battalion to the **order**. The adjutant takes his post, passing to the right of the major.

TO DISMISS THE BATTALION.

272. What is the command for dismissing the battalion, and how executed?

Dismiss your companies. Staff and non-commissioned staff officers fall out; each captain marches his company off and dismisses it.

TO RECTIFY THE ALIGNMENT.

273. Being in line at a halt, what is the command for aligning the battalion, and how executed?

1. Center (right or left), 2. DRESS. The captains dress their companies successively toward the center (right or left) guide of the battalion, each as soon as the captain next toward the indicated guide commands, **Front.** The captains of the center companies (if the dress is center) dress them without waiting for each other.

274. What is the command for giving the battalion a new alignment, and how executed?

1. Guides center (right or left) company on the line, 2. Guides on the line, 3. Center (right or left), 4. DRESS; 5. Guides, 6. POSTS.

At the first command, the designated guides place themselves on the line (par. 271), facing the center (right or left). The major establishes them in the direction he wishes to give the battalion. At the second command, the guides of the other companies take posts, facing the center (right or left), so as to prolong the line. At the command **Dress,** each captain dresses his company to the flank toward which the guides of his company face. At the command **Posts,** given when all companies have completed the **dress,** the guides return to their posts.

TO RECTIFY THE COLUMN.

275. Being in column of squads or companies, or in close column, at a halt, if the guides do not cover or have not their proper distances, and it is desired to correct them, what does the major command, and how executed?

Digitized by Google

1. Right (Left), 2. DRESS. Captains of companies in rear of the first place their right guides so as to cover at the proper distance; each captain aligns his company to the right, and commands, **Front.**

ON RIGHT (LEFT) INTO LINE.

276. Being in column of squads or companies, what is the command for forming on right into line, and how executed?

1. On right (left) into line, 2. MARCH; 3. Battalion, 4. HALT. Being in column of squads, at the first command, the captain of the leading company commands, **Squads right;** if at a halt, each captain in rear commands, **Forward.** At the second command the leading company marches in line to the right; the companies in rear continue to march to the front and form successively on the left, each, when opposite its place, being marched in line to the right. The fourth command is given when the first company has advanced the desired distance in the new direction; it halts and is dressed to the right by its captain; the others complete the movement, each being halted one pace in rear of the line established by the first company and then dressed to the right. Being in column of companies: At the first command, the captain of the first company commands: **Right turn.** If at a halt, each captain in rear commands: **Forward.** Each of the captains in rear of the leading company gives the command, **1. Right turn,** in time to add, **2. MARCH,** when his company arrives opposite the right of its place in line. The fourth command is given, and the movement completed as explained above. Whether executed from column of squads or column of companies, each captain places himself so as to march beside the right guide after his company forms line or changes direction to the right. If executed in double time, the leading company marches in double time until halted.

FRONT INTO LINE.

277. Being in column of squads or companies, what is the command to form front into line, and how executed?

1. Right (Left) front into line, 2. MARCH. Being in column of squads: At the first command the captain of the leading company commands: **Column right;** the captains of companies in rear: **Column half right.** At the second command, the leading company executes **column right,** and, as the last squad completes the change of direction, is formed in line to the left, halted, and dresses to the

Digitized by Google

left. Each of the companies in rear is conducted by the most convenient route to the rear of the right of the preceding company, thence to the right, parallel to and one pace in rear of the new line; when opposite its place, it is formed in line to the left, halted, and dressed to the left. Being in column of companies: If marching, the captain of the leading company gives the necessary commands to halt his company at the second command; if at a halt, the leading company stands fast. At the first command, the captain of each company in rear commands: **Squads right** or **Right by squads,** and after the second command conducts his company by the most convenient route to its place in line, as described above. Whether executed from column of squads or column of companies, each captain halts when opposite or at the point where the left of his company is to rest.

TO FORM COLUMN OF COMPANIES SUCCESSIVELY TO THE RIGHT OR LEFT.

278. Being in column of squads, what is the command to form column of companies successively to the right or left, and how executed?

1. Column of companies, first company, squads right (left), 2. MARCH. The leading company executes **squads right** and moves forward. The other companies move forward in column of squads and successively march in line to the right on the same ground as the leading company and in such manner that the guide covers the guide of the preceding company.

TO FORM COLUMN OF SQUADS SUCCESSIVELY TO THE RIGHT OR LEFT.

279. Being in column of companies, what is the command to form column of squads successively to the right or left, and how executed?

1. Column of squads, first company, squads right (left), 2. MARCH. The leading company executes **squads right** and moves forward. The other companies move forward in column of companies and successively march in column of squads to the right on the same ground as the leading company.

Digitized by Google

TO CHANGE DIRECTION.

280. Being in column of companies, or close column, what is the command to change direction, and how executed?

1. Column right (left), 2. MARCH. The captain of the first company commands: **Right turn.** The leading company turns to the right on moving pivot, the captain adding: **1. Forward, 2. MARCH,** upon its completion. The other companies march squarely up to the turning-point; each changes direction by the same commands and means as the first and in such manner that the guide covers the guide of the preceding company.

281. Being in line of companies or close line, what is the command to change direction, and how executed?

1. Battalion right (left), 2. MARCH; 3. Battalion, 4. HALT. The right company changes direction to the right; the other companies are conducted by the shortest line to their places abreast of the first. The fourth command is given when the right company has advanced the desired distance in the new direction; that company halts; the others halt successively upon arriving on the line.

282. Being in column of squads, how does the battalion change direction?

By the same commands and in the manner prescribed for the company.

MASS FORMATIONS.

283. Being in line, line of companies, column of companies, or column of squads, what is the command to form in mass, and how executed?

1. Close on first (fourth) company, 2. MARCH. If at a halt, the indicated company stands fast; if marching, it is halted; each of the other companies is conducted toward it and is halted in proper order in close column if the indicated company is in line, or in close line if the indicated company be in column of squads. If the battalion is in line, companies form successively in rear of the indicated company; if in column of squads, companies in rear of the leading company form on the left of it. In close column, formed from line on the first company, the left guides cover; formed on the fourth company, right guides cover. If formed on the leading company, the guide remains as before the formation. In close line, the guides are halted abreast of the guide of the leading company.

Digitized by Google

How is the formation restricted when the battalion is in column?
It closes on the leading company only.

TO EXTEND THE MASS.

284. Being in close column or in close line, what is the command to extend the battalion, and how executed?

1. Extend on first (fourth) company, 2. MARCH. Being in close line: If at a halt, the indicated company stands fast; if marching, it halts; each of the other companies is conducted away from the indicated company and is halted in its proper order in line of companies. Being in close column: The extension is made on the fourth company only; if marching, the leading company continues to march; companies in rear are halted and successively resume the march in time to follow at full distance; if at a halt, the leading company marches; companies in rear successively march in time to follow at full distance.

Is close column extended in double time?
No.

285. Being in close column, what is the command to form front into line, and how executed?

1. Right (Left) front into line, 2. MARCH. Executed as from column of companies.

286. Being in close column, what is the command to form column of squads successively to the right or left, and how executed?

1. Column of squads, first (fourth) company, squads right (left), 2. MARCH. The designated company marches in column of squads to the right. Each of the other companies executes the same movement in time to follow the preceding company in column.

287. Being in close line, what is the command to form column of squads to the front, and how executed?

1. Column of squads, first (fourth) company, forward, 2. MARCH. The designated company moves forward. The other companies (halting, if in march) successively take up the march and follow in column.

ROUTE STEP AND AT EASE.

288. How does the battalion march at route step and at ease?

As prescribed in the School of the Company. When marching in column of companies or platoons, the guides maintain the trace and distance.

Digitized by Google

In route marches, where does the major march?
At the head of the column.

In route marches, when necesssary, where may the file-closers be directed to march?
At the head and rear of their companies.

ASSEMBLY.

289. Being wholly or partially deployed, or the companies being separated, what is the command to assemble the battalion, and how is it executed?
1. Assemble, 2. MARCH. The major places himself opposite to or designates the element or point on which the battalion is to assemble. Companies are assembled and marched to the indicated point. As the companies arrive, the major or the adjutant indicates the formation to be taken.

COMBAT PRINCIPLES.

290. To what are the following references to orders applicable?
To attack or defense.

291. In extended order, what is the largest unit to execute movements by prescribed commands or means?
The company.

292. How does the major direct the disposition of his battalion and control its subsequent movements?
He assembles his captains, if practicable, and directs the dispositions by means of tactical orders and controls its subsequent movements by such orders and commands as are suitable to the occasion.

What should the order designate?
It should designate the companies which are to constitute the firing-line and those which are to constitute the support. In attack, it should designate the direction or the objective, and should designate the right or left company as base company.
In defense, it should describe the front of each company and, if necessary, the sector to be observed by each.

293. When the battalion is operating alone, what does the major provide for?
The reconnaissance and protection of his flanks.

Digitized by Google

When the battalion is part of a larger force, what provisions does the major make?

Similar provisions, when necessary, without orders from higher authority, unless such authority has specifically directed other suitable reconnaissance and protection.

294. Upon whose authority will the extra ammunition be issued?

When the battalion is deployed upon the initiative of the major, he will indicate whether the extra ammunition shall be issued; if deployed in pursuance of orders of higher authority, the major will cause the issue of extra ammunition, unless such authority has given directions to the contrary.

DEPLOYMENT.

295. To what are the following principles of deployment applicable?

To attack or defense.

296. What should be avoided as regards the time of deployment?

A premature deployment, since it involves a long, disorganizing, and fatiguing advance of the skirmish-line.

What is a greater evil than a premature deployment?

To be caught by heavy fire when in dense column or other close formation. Hence, advantage should be taken of cover in order to retain the battalion in close-order formation until exposure to heavy hostile fire may reasonably be anticipated.

297. Who regulates the depth of the deployment and the extent and density of the firing-line?

The major, subject to such restrictions as a senior may have imposed.

How are companies or designated subdivisions and detachments conducted?

In such manner as best to accomplish the mission assigned to them under the major's orders. Companies designated for the firing-line march independently to the place of deployment, form skirmish-line, and take up the advance. They conform, in general, to the base company.

298. Whether the battalion is operating alone or as a part of a larger force, what provision should its commander always make, and for what purpose?

Digitized by Google

He should hold a part of his command out of the firing-line. By the judicious use of this force, the major can exert an influence not otherwise possible over his firing-line, and can control, within reasonable limits, an action once begun. So if his battalion be assigned to the firing-line, the major will cause one, two, or three companies to be deployed on the firing-line, retaining the remaining companies or company as a support for that firing-line.

What governs the division of the battalion into firing-line and support?

The front to be covered and the nature and anticipated severity of the action.

299. What will generally determine the strength of the support?

If the battalion be part of a larger command, the number of companies in the firing-line will generally be determinable from the regimental commander's orders; the remainder constitute the support. If the battalion is acting alone, the support must be strong enough to maintain the original fire-power of the firing-line, to protect the flanks, and to perform the functions of a reserve, whatever to the issue of the action. (See par. 346.)

300. How is the battalion support disposed?

If the battalion is operating alone, the support may, according to circumstances, be held in one or two bodies and placed behind the center, or on one or both flanks of the firing-line, or echeloned beyond a flank. If the battalion is part of a larger force, the support is generally held in one body.

301. What should be the distance between the firing-line and the supporting group or groups?

It will vary between wide limits; it should be as short as the necessity for protection from heavy losses will permit. When cover is available, the support should be as close as 50 to 100 yards; when such cover is not available, it should not be closer than 300 yards. It may be as far as 500 yards in rear, if good cover is there obtainable and is not obtainable at a lesser distance.

302. May it become necessary to place an entire battalion or regiment in the firing-line at the initial deployment and support it by other troops?

Yes; in exceptional cases, as in a meeting engagement.

What is the disadvantage of such deployment?

Digitized by Google

It causes the earlier mingling of the larger units, thus rendering leadership and control extremely difficult.

What will measure the increase of the necessity for such deployment?

The inefficiency of the commander and of the service of information.

FIRE.

303. Fire-direction and control are the functions of what officers?

Company and platoon commanders.

What are the duties of the major as regards fire-direction?

He makes the primary apportionment of the target—in defense, by assigning sectors of fire; in attack, by assigning the objective.

In attack, what does each company take as its target?

That part of the general objective which lies in its front.

804. Who should indicate the point or time at which the fire-fight is to open?

The major. He may do this in his order for deployment or he may follow the firing-line close enough to do so at the proper time. If it be impracticable for him to do either, the senior officer with the firing-line, in each battalion, selects the time for opening fire.

ATTACK.

305. What is the attack unit?

The battalion, whether operating alone or as part of a larger unit.

306. How does the major execute his part of the attack?

If his battalion be one of several in the firing-line, he pushes it forward as vigorously as possible within the front or section assigned to it. The great degree of independence allowed to him as to details demands, in turn, the exercise of good judgment on his part.

What will enable one battalion to advance more rapidly in attack than another less fortunate?

Better leadership, better troops, and more favorable terrain.

What will the advance of such a battalion insure?

The advance of others.

What should the leading battalion avoid?

Becoming isolated; isolation may lead to its destruction.

Digitized by Google

307. The deployment having been made, describe the principles of the advance of the firing-line.

The firing-line advances without firing. The predominate idea must be to close with the enemy as soon as possible without ruinous losses. The limited supply of ammunition and the uncertainty of re-supply, the necessity for securing fire-superiority in order to advance within the shorter ranges, makes it imperative that fire be not opened as long as the advance can be continued without demoralizing losses. The attack which halts to open fire at extreme ranges (over 1,200 yards) is not likely to ever reach its destination. Every effort should be made, by using cover or inconspicuous formations, or by advancing the firing-line as a whole, to arrive within 800 yards of the enemy before opening fire.

308. Describe the effect of the enemy's artillery fire as compared with his infantry fire, and explain the object of the advance described above.

Except when the enemy's artillery is able to effect an unusual concentration of fire, its fire upon deployed infantry causes losses which are unimportant when compared with those inflicted by his infantry, hence the attacking infantry should proceed to a position as described above, and from which an effective fire can be directed against the hostile infantry with a view to obtaining fire-superiority. The effectiveness of the enemy's fire must be reduced so as to permit further advance. The more effective the fire to which the enemy is subjected, the less effective will be his fire.

309. What will sometimes permit the further advance of the entire firing-line from a point 800 yards from the enemy, but what will generally be necessary?

Occasionally the fire of adjacent battalions, or of infantry employing fire of position, or of supporting artillery, will permit the further advance of the entire firing-line, but it will generally be necessary to advance by rushes of fractions of the line.

What should be the strength of the fraction making the rush?

It should be as large as the hostile fire and the necessity for maintaining fire-superiority will permit. Depending upon circumstances, the strength of the fraction may vary from a company to a few men.

Describe the method of advance and the effect of varying the strength of the fraction which rushes.

Digitized by Google

The advance is made as rapidly as possible without loosing fire-superiority. The smaller the fraction which rushes, the greater the number of rifles which continue to fire upon the enemy. On the other hand, the smaller the fraction which rushes, the slower will be the progress of the attack.

310. What regulates the number of rifles that must comtinue in action?

Enough to insure the success of each rush.

Frequently, how must the successive advances of the firing-line be effected?

By rushes of fractions of decreased size—that is, advances by rushes may first be made by company, later by half company or platoon, and finally by squads or files; but no subsequent opportunity to increase the rate of advance, such as better cover or a decrease of the hostile fire, should be overlooked.

311. Which fraction should begin the rush?

Whenever possible, a flank fraction of the firing-line.

Who determines when an advance by rushes shall be attempted?

In the absence of express directions from the major, each captain of a flank company determines when to advance by rushes.

In an advance by rushes, which company is the base company, and what does the remainder of the firing-line do?

A flank company which inaugurates an advance by rushes becomes the base company, if not already the base. An advance by rushes having been inaugurated on one flank, the remainder of the firing-line conforms; fractions rush successively from that flank and halt on the line established by the initial rush.

What regulates the size of the fractions?

They need not be uniform in size. Each captain indicates how his company shall rush, having due regard to the ground and the state of the fire-fight.

312. When is a fraction, about to rush, sent forward, and why?

When the remainder of the line is firing vigorously; otherwise, the chief advantage of this method of advancing is lost.

What is the length of the rush, and upon what does it depend?

From thirty to eighty yards; depending upon the existence of cover, positions for firing, and the hostile fire.

Digitized by Google

313. When the entire firing-line of the battalion has advanced to the new line, what is done?

Fresh opportunities to advance are sought, as before.

314. Since two identical situations will never confront the battalion, what is prohibited at drill?

The arrangement of the details of an advance before the preceding one has been concluded, or the employment of a fixed or prearranged method of advancing by rushes.

315. What does the major do?

Posts himself so as best to direct the reinforcing of the firing-line from the support. When all or nearly all of the support has been absorbed by the firing-line, he joins and takes full charge of the latter.

316. Upon what principles should the firing-line be reinforced?

The reinforcing of the firing-line by driblets of a squad or a few men has no appreciable effect. The firing-line requires either no reinforcement or a strong one. Generally, one or two platoons will be sent forward under cover of a heavy fire of the firing-line.

317. What means are used to facilitate control and to provide intervals in which reinforcements may be placed?

The companies in the firing-line should be kept closed in on their centers as they become depleted by casualties during the advance.

When this method is impracticable, what is done?

Reinforcements must mingle with and thicken the firing-line.

Which method will be the rule, rather than the exception, in battle?

The latter, and to familiarize the men with such conditions, the combat exercises of the battalion should include both methods of reinforcing. Occasionally, to provide the necessary intervals for reinforcing by either of these methods, the firing-line should be thinned by causing men to drop out and simulate losses during the various advances. Under ordinary conditions, the depletion of the firing-line for this purpose will be from one-fifth to one-half of its strength.

318. Who determines when bayonets shall be fixed, and gives the proper command or signal?

The major.

Digitized by Google

How is the command transmitted and executed by the firing-line?

It is repeated by all parts of the firing-line. Each man, as soon as he recognizes the command or signal, suspends firing, quickly fixes his bayonet, and immediately resumes firing; the support also fixes bayonets.

NOTE.—The concerted fixing of the bayonet by the firing-line at drill does not simulate battle conditions and should not be required. It is essential that there be no marked pause in the firing.

At what time before the charge will bayonets generally be fixed?

Before or during the last or second last advance preceding the charge.

319. Subject to orders from higher authority, who determines the point from which the charge is to be made, and how executed?

The major. The firing-line having arrived at that point, and being in readiness, the major causes the **charge** to be sounded. The signal is repeated by the musicians of all parts of the line. The company officers lead the charge. The skirmishers spring forward shouting, run with bayonets at charge, and close with the enemy. The further conduct of the charging troops will depend on circumstances; they may halt and engage in bayonet combat or in pursuing fire; they may advance a short distance to obtain a field of fire or to drive the enemy from the vicinity; they may assemble or reorganize, etc. If the enemy vacates his position, every effort should be made to open fire at once on the retreating mass, reorganization of the attacking troops being of secondary importance to the infliction of further losses upon the enemy and to increase his confusion. In combat exercises, the major will assume a situation and terminate the assault accordingly.

DEFENSE.

320. In defense, what is the tactical unit best suited to independent assignment?

The battalion.

How are defensive positions usually divided?

Into sections and a battalion assigned to each.

321. What are the duties of the major relative to the location and construction of trenches and obstacles?

Digitized by Google

He locates such fire, communicating, and cover-trenches and obstacles as are to be constructed. He assigns companies to construct them and details the troops to occupy them.

322. How does the major reinforce the firing-line?

In accordance with the principles applicable to and explained in connection with the attack, maintaining no more rifles in the firing-line than are necessary to prevent the enemy's advance.

323. What is the rule for opening fire on the enemy, and how is it modified?

The supply of ammunition being usually ample, fire is opened as soon as it is possible to break up the enemy's formation, stop his advance, or inflict material loss; but this rule must be modified to suit the ammunition supply.

324. What does the major do when an assault by the enemy is imminent?

He causes the firing-line and support to fix bayonets.

Is this action ever taken by the captains?

Yes; if they are not in communication with the major, and the measure is deemed advisable.

Will fire alone stop a determined, skillfully conducted attack, and how must such an attack be met?

No. The defender must have equal tenacity; if he can stay in his trench or position and cross bayonets, he will at least have neutralized the hostile first line, and the combat will be decided by reserves.

325. If ordered or compelled to withdraw under hostile infantry fire, or in the presence of hostile infantry, how will the support be posted?

So as to cover the retirement of the firing-line.

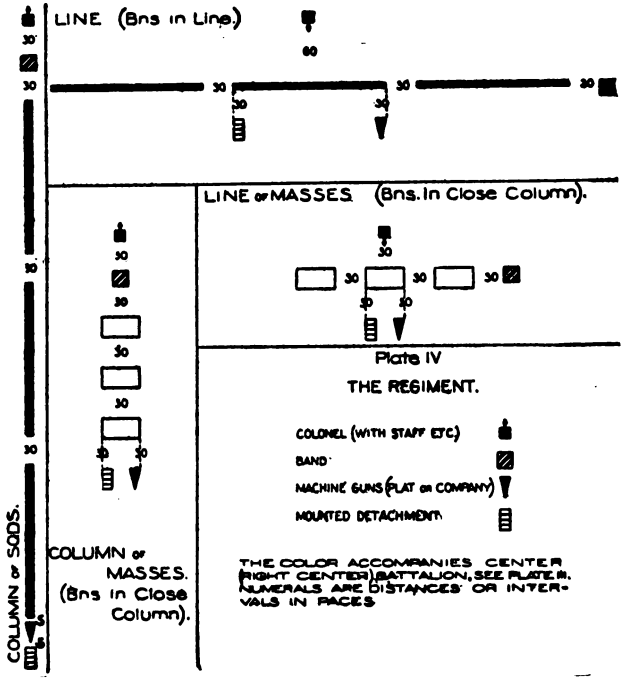
326. When the battalion is operating alone, what principles govern the support?

It must be strong and must be fed sparing into the firing-line, especially if a counter-attack is planned. Opportunities for counter-attack should be sought at all times.

Digitized by Google

THE REGIMENT.

327. How many battalions normally constitute the regiment?
Three.
What kind of a regiment are the drill regulations applicable to?



A regiment of two or more battalions.

Digitized by Google

How are the special units, such as band, machine-gun company, and mounted scouts, maneuvered?

They have special formations for their own use.

To what units do the movements prescribed in drill regulations apply, and how are the special units conducted?

The battalions; special units conform thereto, unless otherwise prescribed or directed.

328. Who is responsible for the theoretical instruction and practical training of the regiment as a whole?

The colonel.

Who conducts the training of the units of the regiment?

Their respective commanders, under the immediate supervision of the colonel.

329. How does the colonel give his commands or orders?

Either orally, by bugle, or by signal, or communicates them by staff officers or orderlies.

How do the majors conduct their battalions?

Each major gives the appropriate commands or orders, and, in close-order movements, causes his battalion to execute the necessary movements at his command of execution. Each major ordinarily moves his battalion from one formation to another, in column of squads, in the most convenient manner, and, in the presence of the enemy, in the most direct manner consistent with cover.

How do the commanders of the special units conduct them?

They observe the same principles as to commands and movements. They take places in the new formation as directed by the colonel; in the absence of such direction, they conform, as nearly as practicable, to Plate 4, maintaining their relative positions with respect to the flank or end of the regiment on which they are originally posted.

330. Where is the lieutenant-colonel posted?

When the regiment is formed, and during ceremonies, the lieutenant-colonel is posted two paces to the left of and one pace less advanced than the colonel; in movements subsequent to the formation of the regiment and other than ceremonies, the lieutenant-colonel is on the left of the colonel.

331. How are the battalions designated?

Digitized by Google

In whatever formation the regiment may be, the battalions retain their permanent administrative designations of 1st, 2d, 3d battalion.

How may they be designated for convenience when in line, or when in column, and to what do these designations apply?

When in line, "right, center, or left battalion"; when in column, "leading, center, or rear battalion." These designations apply to the actual positions of the battalions in line or column.

332. When do the battalions march and stand at ease?

During movements subsequent to the formation of the regiment except at ceremonies, or when rendering honors, or when otherwise directed.

CLOSE ORDER.

To Form the Regiment.

333. Unless otherwise directed, how are the battalions posted?

From right to left, or from head to rear, according to the rank of the battalion commanders present, the senior on the right or at the head. A battalion whose major is in command of the regiment retains its place.

334. How is the regiment formed for ordinary purposes?

In column of squads or in column of masses. The adjutant informs the majors what the formation is to be. The battalions and special units having been formed, he posts himself and draws saber. Adjutant's call is sounded, or the adjutant signals **assemble.** If forming in column of squads, the adjutant posts himself so as to be facing the column when formed and six paces in front of the place to be occupied by the leading guide of the regiment; if forming in column of masses, he posts himself so as to be facing the right guides of the column when formed, and six paces in front of the place to be occupied by the right guide of the leading company. Later, he moves so as best to observe the formation. The battalions are halted at attention in column of squads or close column, as the case may be, successively from the front in their proper order and places. The band takes its place when the leading battalion is halted. Other special units take their places in turn when the rear battalion has halted. The majors and the commanders of the machine-gun company and mounted scouts (or detachment) each, when his command is in place, salutes the adjutant and commands: **At ease.** The adjutant returns the salutes. When all have saluted and the band

Digitized by Google

is in place, the adjutant rides to the colonel, reports: "Sir, the regiment is formed," and takes his post. The colonel draws saber.

May the formation in column of squads be modified, and, if so, how?

Yes; to the extent demanded by circumstances. Prior to the formation, the adjutant indicates the point where the head of the column is to rest and the direction in which it is to face; he then posts himself so as best to observe the formation. At adjutant's call or assemble, the leading battalion marches to and halts at the indicated point. The other battalions take positions from which they may conveniently follow in their proper places.

335. When is the regiment formed in line or in line of masses, and how?

For ceremonies or when directed. The adjutant posts himself so as to be six paces to the right of the right or leading company of the right battalion when the regiment is formed and faces in the direction in which the line is to extend. Adjutant's call is sounded; the band plays. The adjutant indicates to the adjutant of the right battalion the point of rest and the direction in which the line is to extend, and then takes post facing the regiment, midway between the post of the colonel and the center of the regiment. Each of the other battalion adjutants precedes his battalion to the line and marks its point of rest. The battalions, arriving from the rear, each in line or close column, as the case may be, are halted on the line successively from right to left in their proper order and places. Upon halting, each major commands: **1. Right, 2, DRESS.** The battalion adjutant assists in aligning the battalion, and then takes his post. The band, arriving from the rear, takes its place in line when the right battalion has halted; it ceases playing when the left battalion has halted. The machine-gun company and the mounted scouts (or detachment) take their places in line after the center battalion has halted. The colonel and those who accompany him take post. When all parts of the line have been dressed, and officers and all others have reached their posts, the adjutant commands: **1. Present, 2. ARMS.** He then turns about and reports to the colonel: "Sir, the regiment is formed." The colonel directs the adjutant: "Take your post, sir," draws saber, and brings the regiment to the order. The adjutant takes his post, passing to the right of the colonel.

Digitized by Google

To Dismiss the Regiment.

336. Being in any formation, what is the command to dismiss the regiment, and how executed?

Dismiss your battalions. Each major marches his battalion off and dismisses it.

Movements by the Regiment.

337. What movements are executed by the regiment as explained in the School of the Soldier and Squad, and how?

The halt, rests, facings, steps and marchings, manual of arms, resumes attention, kneel, lie down, stack and take arms, substituting in the commands, when necessary, "battalions" for "squads."

What movements are executed by the regiment as explained in the School of the Company?

Squads right (left), squads right (left) about, route step and at ease, oblique and resume the direct march. Also the regiment in column of files, twos, squads, or platoons, changes direction, and in column of squads, forms column of twos or files, and re-forms column of twos or squads, and in column of companies, changes direction as explained in the School of the Company.

338. When the formation admits of the simultaneous execution, by battalions, companies, or platoons, of movements prescribed in the School of the Company or Battalion, how may the colonel cause such movements to be executed?

By prefixing, where necessary, **battalions (companies, platoons)** to the commands prescribed therein

339. What is the usual column of march, and how may it be shortened?

The column of squads. To shorten the column, if conditions permit, a double column of squads may be used, the companies of each battalion marching abreast in two columns.

Preliminary to an engagement, how will the regiment or its units be placed?

In the formation best suited to its subsequent tactical employment.

Digitized by Google

340. How may the colonel cause the regiment to assume any formation?

He indicates to the majors the character of the formation desired, the order of the battalions, and the point of rest. Each battalion is conducted by its major and is placed in its proper order in the formation by the most convenient means and route.

Having halted in a formation, what is prohibited?

No movements for the purpose of correcting minor discrepancies in alignments, intervals, or distances are made, unless specially directed by the colonel, or necessitated by conditions of cover.

341. How are intervals, distances, and alignments corrected?

The colonel directs one or more of the majors to rectify their battalions. Each major so directed causes his battalion to correct its alignment, intervals, and distances, and places it in its proper position in the formation.

COMBAT PRINCIPLES.

342. How is the regiment deployed?

By the colonel's order to the commanders of battalions and special units.

What should the order contain?

It should give them information of the situation and of the proposed plan of action. In attack, the order should assign to each battalion not in reserve its objective or line of advance; in defense, it should assign to each its sector. In either case it should designate the troops for and the position of the reserve, and prescribe the employment of the machine gun and mounted scouts. Both in attack and defense, the order may fix the front to be covered in the deployment.

What should be studiously avoided?

Encroachments upon the proper functions of subordinates and unnecessary details.

What disposition is made of the band?

The colonel habitually places the band at the disposal of the surgeon for employment in caring for the wounded.

343. When operating alone and attacking, what should the regiment undertake?

An enveloping attack, if it does not result in over-extension.

Digitized by Google

What are the limits of extension for a regiment of 1,500 rifles?

When making an enveloping attack alone, 1,000 yards between its extreme flanks is seldom justifiable; when part of a battle-line, a front of 500 yards can rarely be exceeded.

344. What are the limits of extension in defense?

The front occupied when acting alone or posted on or near the flank of a battle-line should seldom exceed 600 yards; when posted as an interior regiment, the front may be increased to 800. The front may be somewhat longer than in the attack, since smaller battalion supports are justifiable. When the regiment is operating alone, however, the regimental reserve should be as strong in the defense as in the attack, unless the flanks are secure.

345. What should the colonel always do?

Hold out a reserve—generally one battalion; but when the regiment is operating alone, it is generally advisable to hold out more at first.

346. Describe the uses of the reserve held out in a regiment, and compare its uses with that of a support of a battalion of the firing-line?

Whereas, the support held out in each battalion of the firing-line is intended to thicken the diminishing firing-line at the proper times and sometimes to lengthen it, the reserve held out in a regiment operating alone is used for this purpose only as a last resort. Its primary functions are: In attack, to protect the flanks, to improve fully the advantages following a victory, or to cover defeat; in defense, to prolong the firing-line, to effect a counter-attack, or to cover withdrawal. It is the colonel's chief means of influencing an action once begun. It should be conserved to await the proper moment for its employment; the combat will seldom come to a successful issue without its employment in some form. The reserve of a regiment operating as part of a large force becomes a local reserve. It replaces depleted supports, and in attack strengthens and protects the firing-line in the charge.

THE BRIGADE.

347. Does the brigade engage in prescribed drills?

No.

What does it engage in, and how are they conducted?

Route marches and battle or other tactical exercises. These are conducted pursuant to commands or orders formulated to suit

Digitized by Google

the conditions of the proposed movement or exercise, and, in general, in accordance with the principles applicable to the regiment.

348. What are the limits of extension of a brigade of about 4,000 rifles?

As part of a general battle-line, a brigade would be deployed on a front of not more than 1,200 yards in attack or 1,600 yards in defense. When acting alone, the distance between extreme flanks in an enveloping attack should not exceed 2,000 yards at the time the attacking infantry opens fire. When acting alone, the front in defense should not exceed 1,600 yards. These limits apply to the original deployment of the brigade for combat, and presuppose an enemy of equal or nearly equal training and morale. The limits necessitated by the subsequent progress of the combat cannot be foreseen.

349. What is the composition, generally, of units larger than a brigade, and where are their tactics considered?

All arms. In the Field Service Regulations.

Digitized by Google

PART II.

COMBAT.

INTRODUCTION.

350. What does Part II. of the Drill Regulations treat of?

Part II. of the Drill Regulations treats only of the basic principles of combat tactics as applied to infantry and to the special units, such as machine guns and mounted scouts, which form a part of infantry regiments and battalions.

NOTE.—The combat tactics of the arms combined are considered in the Field Service Regulations.

351. What does modern combat demand?

The highest order of training, discipline, leadership, and morale on the part of the infantry. Complicated maneuvers are impracticable.

What must be depended upon for success?

Efficient leadership and a determination to win by simple and direct methods.

352. What are the duties of infantry, and what does modern war require of it?

The duties of infantry are many and difficult. All infantry must be able to cope with all conditions that may arise. Modern war requires but one kind of infantry—good infantry.

353. What must the infantry do to gain decisive results?

Take the offensive.

What is likely to be the result?

Both sides are likely to attempt it, though not necessarily at the same time or in the same part of a long battle-line.

In the local combats which make up the general battle, what will win?

The better endurance, use of ground, fire-efficiency, discipline, and training.

What is the duty of the infantry?

Digitized by Google

To win the local successes, which enable the commanding general to win the battle.

354. What qualities must the infantry have, and what must it be trained to bear?

It must have the tenacity to hold every advantage gained; the individual and collective discipline and skill needed to master the enemy's fire; the determination to close with the enemy in attack and to meet him with the bayonet in defense. It must be trained to bear the heaviest burdens and losses, both of combat and march.

What can good infantry accomplish?

The defeat of an enemy greatly superior in numbers, but lacking in training, discipline, leadership, and morale.

355. How is each case met, and what is the use of study and practice?

It is impossible to establish fixed forms or to give general instructions that will cover all cases. Officers and non-commissioned officers must be so trained that they can apply suitable means and methods to each case as it arises. Study and practice are necessary to acquire proper facility in this respect. Theoretical instruction cannot replace practical instruction; the former supplies correct ideas and gives to practical work an interest, purpose, and definiteness not otherwise obtainable.

356. After the mechanism of extended-order drill has been learned with precision in the company, what kind of exercises should be engaged in?

Every exercise should be, as far as practicable, in the nature of a maneuver (combat exercise) against an imaginary, outlined, or represented enemy. Company extended-order drill may be conducted without reference to a tactical situation, but a combat exercise, whatever may be the size of the unit employed, should be conducted under an assumed tactical situation.

357. Describe an effective method of conducting a combat exercise.

Outline the enemy with a few men equipped with flags. The umpire or inspector states the situation, and the commander leads his troops with due regard to the assumption made. Changes in the situation, the results of reconnaissance, the character of artillery fire, etc., are made known to the commander when necessary by the umpire or instructor, who, in order to observe and influence the

Digitized by Google

conduct of the exercise, remains in rear of the firing-line. From this position he indicates, with the aid of prearranged signals, the character of the fire and movements of the hostile infantry. These signals are intended for the men outlining the enemy; these men repeat the signals; all officers and men engaged in the exercise and in sight of the outlined enemy are thus informed of the enemy's action, and the exercise is conducted accordingly. Assistant umpires, about one for each company in the firing-line, may assist in indicating hostile fire and movements and in observing the conduct of the exercise. An outlined enemy may be made to attack or defend. Situations should be simple and natural. During or after the exercise the umpire or inspector should call attention to any improper movements or incorrect methods of execution. He will prohibit all movements of troops or individuals that would be impossible if the enemy were real. The slow progress of events to be expected on the battle-field can hardly be simulated, but the umpire or inspector will prevent undue haste and will attempt to enforce a reasonably slow rate of progress. The same exercise should not be repeated over the same ground and under the same situation. Such repetitions lead to the adoption of a fixed mode of attack or defense and develop mere drill-masters. Fixed or prearranged systems are prohibited.

LEADERSHIP.

General Considerations.

358. What does the art of leadership consist of, and what are the fundamental characteristics of successful leadership?

Applying sound tactical principles to concrete cases on the battle-field, its fundamental characteristics are self-reliance, initiative, aggressiveness, and a conception of team-work.

359. What form the soundest basis for a successful combat?

A correct grasp of the situation and a definite plan of action.

State two rules of action in combat.

A good plan once adopted and put into execution should not be abandoned unless it becomes clear that it cannot succeed. Afterthoughts are dangerous, except as they aid in the execution of details in the original plan.

360. What kind of combats should be avoided, and why?

Those that do not promise success or some real advantage to the

Digitized by Google

general issue; they cause unnecessary losses, impair the morale of one's own troops, and raise that of the enemy.

361. What results may be expected of complicated maneuvers in war?

They are not likely to succeed.

What must be the character of all plans and the methods adopted for carrying them into effect?

They must be simple and direct.

362. What must be maintained within the units, if success is to be expected?

Order and cohesion.

363. How must officers appear, how must they act, and what must they require of their troops?

They must show themselves to be true leaders. They must act in accordance with the spirit of their orders, and must require of their troops the strictest discipline on the field of battle.

364. When are best results obtained?

When leaders know the capacity and traits of those whom they command.

Hence, what should be avoided?

In making detachments, units should not be broken up, and a deployment that would cause an intermingling of the larger units in the firing-line should be avoided.

365. What is the disadvantage of the deployment of troops?

It makes the leading of troops difficult.

In view of this disadvantage, what is necessary?

A high degree of training and discipline and the use of close-order formation to the fullest extent possible.

366. How should the strength of the troops be conserved and used?

In order to lighten the severe physical strain inseparable from infantry service in campaign, constant efforts must be made to spare the troops unnecessary hardship and fatigue; but, when necessity arises, the limit of endurance must be exacted.

367. What military offense parades in the guise of an act of humanity, and how should it be treated?

When officers or men belonging to fighting troops leave their proper places to carry back, or to care for, wounded during the

Digitized by Google

progress of the action, they are guilty of skulking. This offense must be repressed with the utmost vigor.

368. In action, what disposition is made of the equipment of the soldier?

The complete equipment is carried into action, unless the weather or the physical condition of the men renders such measure a severe hardship. In any event, only the pack will be laid aside. (NOTE,—The "pack" includes blanket, poncho, and shelter-tent.) The determination of this question rests with the regiment commander. The complete equipment affords to men lying prone considerable protection against shrapnel.

369. Where should the commander and subordinate commanders take post?

The post of the commander must be such as will enable him to observe the progress of events and to communicate his orders. Subordinate commanders, in addition, must be in position to transmit the orders of superiors.

Before entering an action, where should the commander be, and why?

As far to the front as possible, in order that he personally may see the situation, order the deployment, and begin the action strictly in accordance with his own wishes.

During the action, what must he leave to local leaders, where must he post himself, and why?

He must, as a rule, leave to the local leaders the detailed conduct of the firing-line, posting himself with his own reserve or in such a position that he is in constant, direct, and easy communication with it.

When does a commander take full and direct charge of his firing-line?

Only when the line has absorbed his whole command.

When their troops are victorious, what should all commanders do?

Press forward in order to clinch the advantage gained, and to use their reserves to the best advantage.

370. What are the limits within which officers should exercise command?

Latitude allowed to officers is in direct proportion to the size of their commands. Each should see to the general execution of his

Digitized by Google

task, leaving to the proper subordinates the supervision of details; interfering only when mistakes are made that threaten to seriously prejudice the general plan.

TEAM-WORK.

371. What increases the difficulties of control?

The comparatively wide fronts of deployed units.

For this reason, what must be granted subordinates?

Great latitude in the execution of their tasks.

What does the success of the whole largely depend upon?

How well each subordinate co-ordinates his work with the general plan.

What is the result of throwing a great responsibility upon subordinates?

It stimulates the right kind of an officer.

372. What is the true rule of conduct for subordinates who are required to act upon their own initiative?

In a given situation, it is far better to do any intelligent thing consistent with aggressive execution of the general plan than to search hesitatingly for the ideal.

When may a subordinate feel that he has enough encouragement to go ahead confidently?

When he is reasonably sure that his intended action is such as would be ordered by the commander, were the latter present and in possession of the facts.

What qualities must a subordinate possess?

The loyalty to carry out the plans of his superior and the keenness to recognize and to seize opportunities to further the general plan.

373. What must be guarded against?

Independence must not become license. Regardless of the number of subordinates who are apparently supreme in their own restricted spheres, there is but one battle and but one supreme will, to which all must conform.

In what manner, therefore, must every subordinate work?

He must work for the general results. He does all in his power to insure co-operation between the subdivisions under his command. He transmits important information to adjoining units or to su-

Digitized by Google

periors in rear, and, with the assistance of information received, keeps himself and his subordinates duly posted as to the situation.

374. When should officers not hesitate to vary from an order?

When circumstances render it impracticable to consult the authority issuing an order which is clearly based upon an incorrect view of the situation, is impossible of execution, or has been rendered impracticable on account of changes which have occurred since its promulgation.

In the application of this rule, upon whom does the responsibility rest for mistakes?

The subordinate.

What is indicative of weakness in a subordinate?

Unwillingness to assume responsibility on proper occasions.

In the application of this rule, what should superiors avoid?

Censuring an apparent disobedience where the act was done in the proper spirit and to advance the general plan.

375. When the men of two or more units intermingle in the firing-line, how should they conduct themselves?

They should submit at once to the senior. Officers and platoon guides seek to fill vacancies caused by casualties. Each seizes any opportunity to exercise the functions consistent with his grade, and all assist in the maintenance of order and control.

How should every lull in the action be utilized?

For as complete restoration of order in the firing-line as the ground or other conditions permit.

376. What should any officer or non-commissioned officer do when he becomes separated from his proper unit and cannot rejoin?

He must at once place himself and his command at the disposal of the nearest higher commander.

When anyone has completed an assigned task, what must he do?

Seek to rejoin his proper command; failing in this, he should join the nearest troops engaged with the enemy.

377. In this connection, what are soldiers taught?

The necessity of remaining with their companies, but that those who become detached must join the nearest company and serve with it till the battle is over or reorganization is ordered.

Digitized by Google

ORDERS.

378. How are commands deployed and entered into the combat?

By the orders of the commander to the subordinate commanders.

What orders are written, and why, and when is the written order used?

The initial combat orders of the division are almost invariably written; those of the brigade are generally so. The written order is preferable, and is used whenever time permits; if time permits, subsequent orders are likewise written, either as field orders or messages.

379. What orders are given verbally, and how?

The initial combat orders of regiments and smaller units; for this purpose the subordinates for whom the orders are intended are assembled, if practicable, at a place from which the situation and plan can be explained?

How are subsequent orders issued, and what caution should be exercised in using verbal messages?

Subsequent orders are verbal or in the form of verbal or written messages. Verbal messages should not be used unless they are short and unmistakable.

380. Upon what is the initial combat order of any commander or subordinate based?

His definite plan for executing the task confronting him.

What should precede the formation of the plan?

Whenever possible, a personal reconnaissance of the terrain and a careful consideration of all information of the enemy.

381. What should the combat order contain?

Such information of the enemy and of neighboring or supporting friendly troops as will enable subordinates to understand the situation. The general plan of action is stated in brief terms, but enough of the commander's intentions is divulged to guide the subsequent actions of the subordinates. Clear and concise instructions are given as to the action to be taken in the combat by each portion of the command. In this way the commander assigns tasks, fronts, objectives, sectors or areas, etc., in accordance with his plan. If the terms employed convey definite ideas and leave no loop-holes,

Digitized by Google

the conduct of subordinates will generally be correspondingly satisfactory. Such miscellaneous matter relating to special troops, trains, ammunition, and future movements of the commander is added as concerns the combat itself. Combat orders should prescribe communication, reconnaissance, flank protection, etc., when some special disposition is desired or when an omission on the part of a subordinate may reasonably be feared.

382. When issuing orders, what should a commander do and what should he not do?

He should indicate clearly what is to be done by each subordinate, but not how it is to be done. He should not encroach upon the functions of a subordinate by prescribing details of execution, unless he has good reason to doubt the ability or judgment of the subordinate, and cannot substitute another.

What contrast appears in the order as a whole?

Although general in its terms, an order must be definite and must be the expression of a fixed decision.

What does ambiguity or vagueness indicate?

Either vacillation or the inability to formulate orders.

383. For whom are the orders of a commander intended, and to whom are they given?

Usually the commanders of the next lower units, but in an emergency a commander should not hesitate to give orders directly to any subordinate. In such case, he should promptly inform the intermediate commander concerned.

Communication.

384. How is communication maintained?

By means of staff officers, messengers, relay systems, visual signals, telegraph, or telephone.

385. What lines of information are established by the signal corps troops of the division?

Those from division to brigade headquarters. The further extension of lines of information in combat by signal corps troops is exceptional.

386. How is communication maintained back to the brigade and forward to the battalions?

Each regiment, employing its own personnel, is responsible for

Digitized by Google

the maintenance of these line of communication from its colonel; for this purpose the regiment uses the various means which may be furnished it. The staff and orderlies, regimental and battalion, are practiced in the use of these means and in messenger service. Orderlies carry signal flags.

387. How is connection maintained between the firing-line and the major or colonel?

It is practically limited to the prescribed flag, arm, and bugle signals.

Other means can only be supplemental. Company musicians carry company flags and are practiced in signaling.

388. How does the artillery generally communicate with the firing-line, and what information and assistance is afforded?

By means of its own staff officers or through an agent, who accompanies some unit in or near the front. The infantry keeps him informed as to the situation, and affords him any reasonable assistance. When the infantry is dependent upon the artillery for fire-support, perfect co-ordination through this representative is of great importance.

COMBAT RECONNAISSANCE.

389. In combat, what is of vital importance, and what may generally be prevented by it?

Combat reconnaissance, and it must not be neglected. By proper preliminary reconnaissance, deployments on wrong lines or in a wrong direction, and surprises may generally be prevented.

390. Towhat are deployed troops, under fire, constrained?

They cannot change front, and thus they suffer greatly when enfiladed.

What is the result of subjecting troops in close order formation to hostile fire?

They may suffer heavy losses in a short time.

In both formations, how must troops be protected?

By proper reconnaissance and warning.

391. How does the difficulty of reconnaissance increase?

In proportion to the measures adopted by the enemy to screen himself.

How is the strength of the reconnoitering party determined?

By the character of the information desired and the nature of

Digitized by Google

the hostile screen. In exceptional cases, as much as a battalion may be necessary in order to break through the hostile screen and enable the commander or officer in charge to reconnoiter in person.

How is a large reconnoitering party conducted?

So as to open the way for small patrols, to serve as a supporting force or rallying-point for them, and to receive and transmit information. Such parties maintain signal communication with the main body, if practicable.

392. What kind of reconnaissance must be made by each separate column moving forward to deploy?

It must reconnoiter to its front and flank and keep in touch with adjoining columns. The extent of the reconnaissance to the flank depends upon the isolation of the columns.

393. For what purpose is a reconnaissance made before an attack?

To determine the enemy's position, the location of his flanks, the character of the terrain, the nature of the hostile field-works, etc., in order to prevent premature deployment and the resulting fatigue and loss of time.

What will frequently be necessary in making this reconnaissance?

To send forward a thin skirmish-line in order to induce the enemy to open fire and reveal his position.

394. How much delay for the purpose of reconnaissance may be warranted?

It will frequently be impossible to obtain satisfactory information until after the action has begun. The delay that may be warranted depends upon the nature of the attack and the necessity for promptness. For example, in a meeting engagement, and sometimes in a holding attack, the reconnaissance may have to be hasty and superficial; whereas in an attack against an enemy carefully prepared for defense there will generally be both time and necessity for thorough reconnaissance.

395. What reconnaissance must be kept up in defense?

Enough to determine the enemy's line of advance, to ascertain his dispositions, to prevent his reconnaissance, etc.

What is the role of patrols or parties posted to prevent hostile reconnaissance?

Digitized by Google

They should relieve the main body of the necessity of betraying its position by firing on small bodies of the enemy.

396. How long does reconnaissance continue?

Throughout the action.

Where is a firing or skirmish-line strong, and where weak, and what steps are taken to protect its weakness?

A firing or skirmish-line can take care of its front, but its flanks are especially vulnerable to modern fire-arms. The moral effect of flanking fire is as great as the physical effect; hence, combat patrols to give warning or covering detachments to give security are indispensable on exposed flanks. This is equally true in attack or defense.

397. What reconnaissance are infantry commanders responsible for?

The fact that cavalry patrols are known to be posted in a certain direction does not relieve infantry commanders of the responsibility for reconnaissance and security. To be surprised by an enemy at short range is an unpardonable offense.

398. Who provides for the reconnaissance and security on a flank of a general line?

The commander of a battalion on a flank of a general line invariably provides for the necessary reconnaissance and security on that flank, unless higher authority has specifically ordered it. In any event, he sends out combat patrols as needed. Where his battalion is on a flank of one section of the line and a considerable interval lies between his battalion and the next section, he makes similar provision.

399. What special patrols do battalion commanders in the first line establish?

Those to observe and report the progress or conduct of adjoining troops when these cannot be seen.

FIRE-SUPERIORITY.

Purpose and Nature.

400. In a decisive battle, what does success depend upon?

Gaining and maintaining fire-superiority. Every effort must be made to gain it early and then to keep it.

What is the necessity of fire-superiority for attacking troops?

Digitized by Google

They must first gain it in order to reach the hostile position. Over open ground attack is possible only when the attacking force has a decided fire-superiority. With such superiority the attack is not only possible, but success is probable and without ruinous losses.

What is the necessity of fire-superiority for defending troops?

They can prevent a charge only when they can master the enemy's fire and inflict heavy losses upon him.

401. What is necessary to obtain fire-superiority?

It is necessary to produce a heavy volume of accurate fire.

What does every increase in the effectiveness of the fire mean?

A corresponding decrease in the effectiveness of the enemy's fire.

What does the volume and accuracy of the fire depend upon?

(a) The number of rifles employed. On a given front, the greatest volume of fire is produced by a firing-line having only sufficient intervals between men to permit the free use of their rifles. The maximum density of a firing-line is, therefore, about one man per yard of front.

(b) The rate of fire affects its volume; an excessive rate reduces its accuracy.

(c) The character of the target influences both volume and accuracy. Larger dimensions, greater visibility, and shorter range increase the rate of fire; greater density increases the effect.

(d) Training and discipline have an important bearing on the rate or volume of fire, but their greatest influence is upon accuracy. The firing efficiency of troops is reduced by fatigue and adverse psychological influences.

(e) Fire-direction and control improve collective accuracy. The importance of fire-direction increases rapidly with the range. Control exerts a powerful influence at all ranges.

FIRE-DIRECTION AND CONTROL.

Opening Fire.

402. Beyond effective ranges, when only can important results be expected?

When the target is large and distinct and much ammunition is used.

Digitized by Google

When is long-range fire permissible, and why?

In pursuit, on account of the moral effect of any fire under the circumstances. At other times such fire is of doubtful value.

403. In attack, what should govern the opening fire?

The desire to open fire when losses are first felt must be repressed. Considerations of time, target, ammunition, and morale make it imperative that the attack withhold its fire and press forward to a first firing position close to the enemy. The attacker's target will be smaller and fainter than the one he presents to the enemy.

404. What conditions and rules govern the opening of fire in defense?

More ammunition is available, ranges are more easily determined, and the enemy usually presents a larger target. The defender may therefore open fire and expect results at longer ranges than the attacker, and particularly if the defenders intend a delaying action only. If the enemy has a powerful artillery, it will often be best for the defending infantry to withhold its fire until the enemy offers a specially favorable target. Vigorous and well-directed bursts of fire are then employed. The troops should, therfore, be given as much artificial protection as time and means permit, and, at an agreed signal, expose themselves as much as necessary, and open fire.

405. In unexpected close encounters, to which side accrues a great advantage?

To the side which first opens rapid and accurate fire with battle-sight.

USE OF GROUND.

406. What use should be made of the natural ground?

The position of the firers must afford a suitable field of fire. The ground should permit constant observation of the enemy, and yet enable the men to secure some cover when not actually firing. Troops whose target is for the moment hidden by unfavorable ground either move forward to better ground or seek to execute cross-fire on another target.

407. Upon what does the likelihood of a target being hit depend?

To a great extent, upon its visibility.

How may the use of ground be employed?

By the skillful use of ground, a firing-line may reduce its visibility without loss of fire-power. Sky-lines are particularly to be avoided.

Digitized by Google

Choice of Target.

408. What target should be chosen?

The hostile troops most dangerous to the firers; these will usually be the nearest hostile infantry. When no target is specially dangerous, that one should be chosen which promises the most hits.

409. What is the effect of frequent changes of target?

It impairs the fire-effect. Random changes to small, unimportant targets impair fire-discipline and accomplish nothing. Attention should be confined to the main target until substantial reason for change is apparent.

410. Give an example warranting change of target.

An opportunity to deliver flanking fire, especially against artillery protected in front by shields, is an example warranting change of target, and should never be overlooked. Such fire demoralizes the troops subjected to it, even if the losses inflicted are small. In this manner a relatively small number of rifles can produce important results.

The Range.

411. What is the importance of sight-setting?

Beyond close range, the correct setting of the rear sight is of primary importance, provided the troops are trained and well in hand. The necessity for correct sight-setting increases rapidly with the range. Its importance decreases as the quality of the troops decrease, for the error in sight-setting, except possibly at very long ranges, becomes unimportant when compared with the error in holding and aiming.

412. In attack, how is the range found?

Distances must usually be estimated and corrections made as errors are observed. Mechanical range-finders and ranging volleys are practicable at times.

In defense, how are the ranges found?

It is generally practicable to measure more accurately the distances to visible objects and to keep a record of them for future use.

Distribution of Fire and Target.

413. What is the purpose of fire-superiority, and how is it accomplished?

Digitized by Google

To get hits whenever possible, but at all events to keep down the enemy's fire and render it harmless. To accomplish this, the target must be covered with fire throughout its whole extent. Troops who are not fired upon will fire with nearly peace-time accuracy. The target is roughly divided, and a part is assigned to each unit. No part of the target is neglected. In attack, by a system of overlapping in assigning targets to platoons, the entire hostile line can be kept under fire, even during a rush.

OBSERVATION.

414. How is the correctness of sight-setting and the distribution of fire over the target verified?

Only by careful observation of the target, the adjacent ground, and the effect upon the enemy.

415. What can be determined only by observation?

Whether the fire-fight is being properly conducted. If the enemy's fire is losing in accuracy and effect, the observer realizes that his side is gaining superiority; if the enemy's fire remains or becomes effective and persistent, he realizes that corrective measures are necessary to increase either volume or accuracy, or both.

DISCIPLINE.

416. What does discipline make?

Good direction and control possible, and is the distinguishing mark of trained troops.

417. What is necessary to maintain discipline in the firing-line?

It will be absent unless officers and non-commissioned officers can make their will known to the men. In the company, therefore, communications must be by simple signals, which, in the roar of musketry, will attract the attention and convey the correct meaning.

EXPENDITURE OF AMMUNITION.

418. What conditions and principles govern the expenditure of ammunition in the attack?

The supply is more limited than in defense. Better judgment must be exercised in expenditure. Ordinarily, troops in the firing-

Digitized by Google

line of an attack cannot expect to have that day more ammunition than they carry into the combat, except such additions as come from the distribution of ammunition of dead and wounded and the surplus brought by reinforcements.

419. How can a certain required fire-effect be produced, and how can true economy only be practiced?

By expending the necessary ammunition without hesitation. Several hours of firing may be necessary to gain fire-superiority. True economy can be practiced only by closing on the enemy before first opening fire, and thereafter suspending fire when there is nothing to shoot at.

SUPPORTING ARTILLERY.

420. What is the principal aid to the infantry in gaining and keeping fire-superiority, and how?

Artillery fire, not only by its hits, but by the moral effect it produces on the enemy.

421. What is the role of artillery in attack and in defense?

In attack, it assists the forward movements of the infantry; it keeps down the fire of the hostile artillery, and seeks to neutralize the hostile infantry by inflicting losses upon it, destroying its morale, driving it to cover, and preventing it from using its weapons effectively. In defense, it ignores the hostile artillery when the enemy's attack reaches a decisive stage and assists in checking the attack, joining its fire-power to that of the defending infantry.

422. What should troops be accustomed to and impressed with as regards friendly artillery fire?

They should be accustomed to being fired over by friendly artillery and impressed with the fact that the artillery should continue firing upon the enemy until the last possible moment. The few casualties resulting from shrapnel bursting short are trifling with those that would result from the increased effectiveness of the enemy's infantry fire were the friendly artillery to cease firing. Casualties inflicted by supporting artillery are not probable until the opposing infantry lines are less than two hundred yards apart.

423. What is done when the distance between the hostile infantry lines becomes so short as to render further use of friendly artillery inadvisable?

The commander of the infantry line, using a preconcerted signal, informs the artillery commander. The latter usually in-

Digitized by Google

creases the range in order to impede the strengthening of the enemy's foremost line

FIRE OF POSITION.

424. Describe fire of position for infantry, and state when it should be used.

Infantry is said to execute fire of position when it is posted so as to assist an attack by firing over the heads or off the flank of the attacking troops and is not itself to engage in the advance, or when, in defense, it is similarly posted to augment the fire of the main line. Machine guns serve a like purpose. In a decisive action, fire of position should be employed whenever the terrain permits and reserve infantry is available.

DEPLOYMENT.

425. In what manner are troops deployed?

Troops are massed preparatory to deployment when the nature of their deployment cannot be foreseen or it is desirable to shorten the column or to clear the road; otherwise, in the deployment of large commands, whether in march column, in bivouac, or massed, and whether forming for attack or for defense, they are ordinarily first formed into a line of columns to facilitate the execution of the front prior to deploying. The rough line or lines of columns thus formed enable troops to take advantage of the terrain in advancing, and shorten the time occupied in forming the firing-line.

426. How is the division deployed, and what do the brigade commanders do?

Each brigade is assigned a definite task or objective. On receipt of his orders, the brigade commander conducts his brigade in column or in line of regiments until it is advisable that it be broken into smaller columns. He then issues his order, assigning to each regiment its task, if practicable.

How are the regiments and battalions led?

In a similar manner, the regimental commanders lead their regiments forward in column, or in line of columns, until the time arrives for issuing the regimental order. It is seldom advisable to break up the battalion before issuing orders for its deployment.

427. What steps should each subordinate commander take, after receiving his order for action?

He should precede his command as far as possible, in order to

Digitized by Google

reconnoiter the ground personally, and should prepare to issue his orders promptly.

428. What reconnaissance does each commander of a column direct?

Whatever may be necessary to front and flank; by this means, and by a judicious choice of ground, he guards against surprise.

429. What is the evil of the premature formation of the firing-line?

It causes unnecessary fatigue and loss of time, and may result in a faulty direction being taken. Troops once deployed make even minor changes of direction with difficulty, and this difficulty increases with the length of the firing-line.

430. In the larger units, how is an original deployment in the wrong direction corrected?

It will usually be necessary to deploy the reserve on the correct front and withdraw and assemble the first line.

431. What will generally be necessary to gain decisive results?

It will be necessary to use all the troops at some stage of the combat. But in the beginning, while the situation is uncertain, care should be taken not to engage too large a proportion of the command. On the other hand, there is no greater error than to employ too few and to sacrifice them by driblets.

432. When it is intended to fight to a decision, what is essential, and what two things are necessary to gain it?

Fire-superiority; a heavy fire and a fire well directed and controlled; both of these are best obtained when the firing-line is as dense as practicable, while leaving the men room for the free use of their rifles. If the men are too widely separated, direction and control are very difficult—often impossible—and the intensity of fire is slight in proportion to the front occupied.

433. What should be the density of the firing-line?

In attack or stubborn defense, the firing-line should have a density of one man per yard of front occupied; where the tactical situation demands the holding of a line too long to be occupied throughout at this density, it is generally better to deploy companies or platoons at one man per yard, leaving gaps in the line between them, than to distribute the men uniformly at increased intervals.

434. When may a relatively thin firing-line be employed?

Digitized by Google

When merely covering the movements of other forces; when on the defensive against poor troops; when the final action to be taken has not yet been determined; and, in general, when fire-superiority is not necessary.

435. Upon what does the length of the firing-line that the whole force may employ depend?

The density of the line and the strength in rear required by the situation.

What constitutes the strength in rear, and how strong should they be?

Supports and reserves. They should be at least strong enough to replace a heavy loss in the original firing-line and to increase the charging-line to a density of at least one and one-half man per yard, and still have troops in rear for protection and for the other purposes mentioned above.

436. In the original deployment, what should be the strength of the reserve held out by each commander?

It should comprise from one-sixth to two-thirds of his unit, depending upon the nature of the service expected of the reserve. A small force in a covering or delaying action requires very little strength in rear, while a large force fighting a decisive battle requires much; therefore, depending upon circumstances, the original deployment, including the strength in rear, may vary from one to ten men per yard. Against an enemy poorly disciplined and trained or lacking in morale, a thinner deployment is permissible.

437. How does the density of the whole deployment vary?

It increases with the size of the command, because the larger the command the greater the necessity for reserves. Thus, a battalion acting alone may attack with two men per yard a front; but a regiment, with three battalions, may only double the front of the one battalion.

438. By the assignment of divisions or larger units to parts of a line of battle several miles long, what is created?

A series of semi-independent battle or local combat districts.

How does the density of deployment vary in these districts?

It may vary greatly, depending upon the activity expected in each district. Within these battle districts, as well as in smaller forces acting alone, parts of the line temporarily of less importance may be held weakly, in order to economize troops and to have more at the decisive point.

Digitized by Google

439. Upon what does the front that a unit may occupy when deployed depend?

Upon whether its flanks are secured. If both flanks are secured by other troops, the unit may increase its front materially by reducing its reserve and supports; if only one flank is secured, the front may still be somewhat increased, but the exposed flank must be guarded by posting the supports or reserve toward that flank. Natural obstacles that secure the flanks have practically the same effect upon deployment.

440. Except when assigned as supports or reserve, how are regiments in the brigade, battalions in the regiment, and companies in the battalion deployed?

When practicable, side by side.

441. In the deployment, what units establish the firing-line?

Battalions, each furnishing its own support.

What units hold out a reserve, what is its strength, and how used?

In each unit larger than the battalion a reserve is held out, its strength depending upon circumstances. In general, the reserve is employed by the commander to meet or improve conditions brought about by the action of the firing-line. It must not be too weak or too split up. It must be posted where the commander believes it will be needed for decisive action, or where he desires to bring about such action. When necessary, parts of it reinforce or prolong the firing-line.

ATTACK.

442. What will insure the success of an attack?

An attack is bound to succeed if fire-superiority is gained and properly used.

To gain this superiority, what is generally required?

That the attack employ more rifles than the defense; this, in turn, means a longer line, as both sides will probably hold a strong firing-line.

443. With large forces, what are the chances of gaining fire-superiority in a frontal attack?

A direct frontal attack gives the attacker little opportunity to bring more rifles to bear. However, if the enemy is unduly extended, a frontal attack may give very decisive results.

Digitized by Google

444. What is the rule as to wide turning movements?

Owing to the difficulty of control and the danger of the parts being defeated in detail, wide turning movements are seldom allowable, except in large forces.

445. What are the advantages of an enveloping attack?

If the attack can be so directed that, while the front is covered, another fraction of the command strikes a flank more or less obliquely (an enveloping attack), the advantages gained are a longer line and more rifles in action, also a converging fire opposed to the enemy's diverging fire.

446. What is the rule as to the envelopment of both flanks?

It should never be attempted without a very decided superiority in numbers.

447. What will generally be the result of an enveloping attack, and what are its advantages?

It will generally result locally in a frontal attack, for it will be met by the enemy's reserve. The advantage of envelopment lies in the longer concentric line, with its preponderance of rifles and its converging fire.

448. In this kind of attack, what is essential to success?

Co-operation between the frontal and enveloping attacks. Both should be pushed vigorously and simultaneously, and ordinarily both should move simultaneously to the charge; but at the final stage of the attack conditions may sometimes warrant one in charging while the other supports it with fire.

What conditions hinder and what facilitate the envelopment of a flank?

The envelopment of a flank is brought about with difficulty when made by troops already deployed in another direction or by their reserves. The two attacks should be deployed at a suitable distance apart, with the lines of attack converging on a point in rear of the hostile position. The troops that are to make the enveloping attack should deploy in the proper direction at the start, and should be given orders which enable them to gain their point of deployment in the most direct and practical manner. The enveloping attack is generally made the stronger, especially in small forces.

Digitized by Google

DEPLOYMENT FOR ATTACK.

449. How far from the hostile position may it be necessary to make the deployment, what preliminary deployment is made, and why?

Where open terrain exposes troops to hostile artillery fire, it may be necessary to make the deployment two miles or more from the hostile position. The foreground should be temporarily occupied by covering troops. If the enemy occupies the foreground with detachments, the cover ng troops must drive them back.

450. What may be done to enable large forces to gain ground toward the enemy cheaper and quicker in the end?

They may move well forward and deploy at night; in such case, the area in which the deployment is to be made should, if practicable, be occupied by covering troops before dark. The deployment will be made with great difficulty unless the ground has been studied by daylight. The deployment gains little unless it establishes the firing-line well within effective range of the enemy's main position.

551. When should each unit assigned a task deploy?

Each unit assigned a task deploys when on its direction-line, or opposite its objective, and when it has no longer sufficient cover for advancing in close order.

What intervals should be maintained between battalions in the firing-line?

Twenty-five to fifty yards should be maintained as long as possible.

How may it be necessary to indicate the direction or objective?

In larger units, on the map; but to battalion commanders it should be pointed out on the ground.

452. Where is the reserve kept, and with what is it charged?

Near enough to the firing-line to be on hand at the decisive stage. It is posted with reference to the attack, or to that part of the attacking-line, from which the greater results are expected; it is also charged with flank-protection, but should be kept intact.

ADVANCING THE ATTACK.

453. What conditions and principles ordinarily govern the advance of the firing-line?

Digitized by Google

The firing-line must ordinarily advance a long distance before it is justified in opening fire. It cannot combat the enemy's artillery, and it is at a disadvantage if it combats the defenders' long-range rifle-fire; hence it ignores both, and, by taking full advantage of cover and of the discipline of the troops, advances to a first firing position at the shortest range possible.

454. What is the best protection against loss while advancing?
To escape the enemy's view.

455. How does each battalion advance?
It finds its own firing position, conforming to the general advance as long as practicable, and taking advantage of the more advanced position of an adjacent battalion in order to gain ground.

456. How should infantry moving to the attack pass through deployed artillery?
It should be done so as to interfere as little as possible with the latter's fire and never so as to cause that fire to cease entirely. As far as practicable, advantage should be taken of intervals in the line, if any. An understanding between artillery and infantry commanders should be had, so as to effect the movement to the best advantage.

457. In advancing the attack, how should advanced elements of the firing-line or detachments in front of it conduct their fire, and when should fire be opened on the main hostile position?
They should not open fire except in defense or to clear the foreground of the enemy. Fire on the main hostile position should not be opened until all or nearly all of the firing-line can join in the fire.

THE FIRE-ATTACK.

458. What is the first object to be sought in the fire-attack, and how attained?
At the first firing position the attack seeks to gain fire-superiority; this may necessitate a steady, accurate fire for a long time. The object is to subdue the enemy's fire and keep it subdued, so that the attacking troops may advance from this point to a favorable place near the enemy from which the charge may be made. Hence, in the advance by rushes, sufficient rifles must be kept constantly in action to keep down the enemy's fire; this determines the size of the fraction rushing.

Digitized by Google

459. What would be the result of advancing without fire-superiority against a determined defense?

Such losses as to bring the attack to a standstill, or to make the apparent success barren of results.

460. What are the surest signs that fire-superiority has been gained, and that a part of the firing-line can advance?

A diminution of the enemy's fire and a pronounced loss in its effectiveness.

461. What fact relative to turning back in daylight must be impressed upon the men?

That, having made a considerable advance under fire, and having been checked, it is suicidal to turn back.

What must be done when the troops can advance no farther?

They must intrench and hold on until the fall of darkness or a favorable turn in the situation develops.

When is intrenching resorted to, and what is the effect on troops of intrenching under fire?

Intrenching is resorted to only when necessary. Troops who have intrenched themselves under fire are moved forward again with difficulty.

462. What use do supports and reserves make of intrenchments vacated by the firing-line?

When they occupy such intrenchments, they should improve them; but they must not be held back or diverted from their true missions on this account.

THE CHARGE.

464. What does fire-superiority gain?

It beats down the enemy's fire, destroys his resistance and morale, and enables the attacking troops to close on him.

What further is needed to drive him out and defeat him?

An actual or threatened occupation of his position.

How is the time for the charge determined?

The psychological moment for the charge cannot be determined far in advance. The tactical instinct of the responsible officer must decide.

465. At what distance should the charge begin, and when is the best time?

Digitized by Google

The defenders, if subjugated by the fire-attack, will frequently leave before the charge begins. On the other hand, it may be necessary to carry the fire-attack to the position and follow it up with a short dash and a bayonet combat. Hence the distance over which the charge may be made will vary between wide limits; it may be from 25 to 400 yards. The charge should be made at the earliest moment that promises success; otherwise, the full advantage of victory will be lost.

466. How should the charge be arranged and conducted?

The commander of the attacking-line should indicate his approval or give the order before the charge is made. Subordinate commanders, usually battalion commanders, whose troops are ready to charge, signal that fact to the commander. It may be necessary for them to wait until other battalions or other parts of the line are ready, or until the necessary reserves arrive. At the signal for the charge, the firing-line and near-by supports and reserves rush forward. (See paragraphs 318 and 319.) The charge is made simultaneously, if possible, by all the units participating therein; but, once committed to the assault, battalions should be pushed with the utmost vigor, and no restraint placed on the order of charging troops by an attempt to maintain alignment.

467. Before ordering the charge, what precaution should the commander take?

He should see that enough troops are on hand to make it a success.

What is the effect of local reserves joining the firing-line in time to participate in the charge, and what should be avoided?

They give it a strong impetus, but too dense a mass should be avoided.

468. How should the line be strengthened and the remaining troops handled?

By prolongation, if practicable, and remaining troops kept in formation for future use; but rather than that the attack should fail, the last-formed body will be sent in, unless it is very apparent that it can do no good.

469. Describe the conditions sufficient for a victory, and state what further is of inestimable value.

To arrive in the hostile position with a very compact firing-line and a few formed supports is sufficient for a victory; but an additional force kept well in hand for pursuit is of inestimable value.

Digitized by Google

470. What co-operation should there be in charging?

A premature charge by a part of the line should be avoided; but, if begun, the other parts of the line should join at once, if there is any prospect of success. Under exceptional conditions, a part of the line may be compelled to charge without authority from the rear. The intention to do so should be signalled to the rear.

471. What gives the assaulting troops the promise of success?

Confidence in their ability to use the bayonet.

472. If the enemy has left the position when the charging troops reach it, what action should the latter take?

They should open a rapid fire upon the retreating enemy, if he is in sight. It is not advisable for the mixed and disordered units to follow him, except to advance to a favorable firing position or to cover the reorganization of others.

473. What use is made of the nearest formed bodies accompanying or following the charge?

They are sent instantly in pursuit. Under cover of these troops, order is restored in the charging line. If the captured position is part of a general line, or is an advanced post, it should be intrenched and occupied at once.

What should not be neglected in spite of the exhaustion of officers and men?

Measures to meet a counter-attack.

474. If the attack receives a temporary set-back, and it is intended to strengthen and continue it, what action will be taken by officers?

They will make every effort to stop the rearward movement and will re-establish the firing-line in a covered position as close as possible to the enemy.

475. If the attack must be abandoned, how should the withdrawal be conducted?

The rearward movement should continue with promptness until the troops reach a feature of the terrain that facilitates the task of checking and reorganizing them. The point selected should be so far to the rear as to prevent interference by the enemy before the troops are ready to resist. The withdrawal of the attacking troops should be covered by the artillery and by reserves, if any are available.

Digitized by Google

PURSUIT.

476. To reap the full fruits of victory, what action must be taken?

A vigorous pursuit must be made. The natural inclination to be satisfied with a successful charge must be overcome. The enemy must be allowed no more time to reorganize than is positively unavoidable.

477. What action is taken by that part of the reserve that is still formed or is best under control?

It is sent forward in pursuit, and vigorously attacks the enemy's main body or covering detachments wherever found.

What action is taken by the artillery and the disordered attacking troops?

The artillery delivers a heavy fire upon the retreating enemy; the disordered attacking troops secure the position, promptly reform, and become a new reserve.

478. If the captured position is a section of the general line, what should be done?

The breach should be heavily occupied, made wider, and strongly secured by drawing on all the reserves in the vicinity.

479. After the pursuit from the immediate battle-field, what action is especially effective where large commands are concerned?

Pursuit by parallel roads.

480. What arms are very effective in pursuit?

Artillery and cavalry.

ATTACK OF FORTIFICATIONS.

481. In the problem of attacking modern fortifications, what modifications enter?

They are few. Such as are to be considered relate chiefly to the greater time and labor of advancing, the more frequent use of darkness, and the use of hand-grenades to augment the fire.

482. If the enemy is strongly fortified and time permits, what conduct may be advisable?

It may be advisable to wait and approach the charging-point under cover of darkness. The necessary reconnaissance and arrangements should be made before dark. If the charge is not to be made at once, the troops intrench the advanced position, using

Digitized by Google

sand-bags if necessary. Before daylight the foreground should be cleared of obstacles.

483. May the charge be made without fire-preparation, and if so, how?

Yes, if the distance is short and other conditions are favorable; in which case it should be launched with spirit and suddenness and at the break of day.

484. In siege operations, how are troops advanced to the charging-point, and what does the method presuppose?

By sapping. This method, however, presupposes that an early victory is not necessary or that it is clearly inadvisable to attempt more direct methods.

HOLDING ATTACK.

485. Describe the holding attack.

The holding attack must be vigorous enough to hold the enemy in position, and must present a front strong enough to conceal the secondary nature of the attack. The holding attack need have comparatively little strength in rear, but conceals the fact by a firing-line not distinguishable from that of a decisive attack.

486. Where are the supports and the reserves kept, and what is their strength?

They are kept at short distances. Their strength is less if the object is merely to hold the enemy fast than if the object is, in addition, to compel him to use up reserves.

487. What should be the strength in rear of holding attacks which may later develop into decisive attacks?

They should be correspondingly strong in rear.

488. What are the characteristics of all feint attacks?

They employ dense firing-lines. Their weakness is in rear and is concealed.

DEFENSE.

Positions and Intrenchments.

489. What are the requirements of a good position?

The first is a clear field of fire to the front and toward exposed flanks to a distance of 600 to 800 yards or more. The length of front should be suitable to the size of the command, and the flanks should be secure. The position should have lateral communica-

Digitized by Google

tion and cover for supports and reserves. It should be one which the enemy cannot avoid, but must attack or give up his mission.

NOTE.—A position having all these advantages will rarely, if ever, be found. The one should be taken which conforms closest to the description.

490. What arrangements for cover should be made?

The natural cover of the position should be fully utilized. In addition, it should be strengthened by field-works and obstacles. The best protection is afforded by deep, narrow, inconspicuous trenches. If little time is available, as much as practicable must be done. That the field-works may not be needed should not cause their construction to be omitted, and the fact that they have been constructed should not influence the act of a commander, if conditions are found to be other than expected.

491. What further preparations are made when time and troops are available?

The necessary communicating and cover-trenches, head cover, bomb-proofs, etc., are made. The fire-trenches should be well supplied with ammunition. The supports are placed close at hand in cover-trenches when natural cover is not available.

492. What is the use of dummy trenches?

They frequently cause the hostile artillery to waste time and ammunition and to divert its fire.

493. What matters are to be decided by the infantry commanders?

The location, extent, profile, garrison, etc., of field-works. Officers must be able to choose ground and properly intrench it.

494. In combat exercises, when it is impracticable to construct the trenches appropriate to the exercise, what method is used?

Their trace may be outlined by bayonets, sticks, or other markers, and the responsible officers required to indicate the profile selected, method and time of construction, garrisons, etc.

DEPLOYMENT FOR DEFENSE.

495. Upon what does the density of the whole deployment depend?

The expected severity of the action, the character of the

Digitized by Google

enemy, the condition of the flanks, the field of fire, the terrain, and the available artificial or natural protection for troops.

496. What should be the density of the firing-line if exposed or well intrenched?

If exposed, it should be as dense in defense as in attack. If well intrenched and with a good field of fire, it may be made thinner. Weaker supports are permissible. For the same number of troops, the front occupied by the defensive may therefore be longer than on the offensive, the battalions placing more companies in the firing-line.

497. What is the difference in formation in a passive defense and an offensive defense?

If it is intended to delay the enemy only, a fairly strong deployment is sufficient, but if decisive results are desired, a change to the offensive must be contemplated, and the corresponding strength n rear provided. This strength is in the reserve, which should be as large as the demands of the firing-line and supports permit. Even in a passive defense, the reserve should be as strong as in the attack, unless the flanks are protected by other means.

498. Where and how are supports located?

They are posted as close to the firing-line as practicable and reinforce the latter according to the principle explained in the attack. When natural cover is not sufficient for the purpose, communicating and cover-trenches are constructed; if time does not permit their construction, it is better to begin the action with a very dense firing-line and no immediate supports than to have supports greatly exposed in rear.

499. Where is the reserve posted, and why and how does its distance from the firing-line increase?

The reserve should be posted so as to be entirely free to act as a whole, according to the developments. The distance from the firing-line to the reserve is generally greater than in the attack. By reason of such a location, the reserve is best able to meet a hostile enveloping attack; it has a better position from which to make a counter-attack; it is in a better position to cover a withdrawal and permit an orderly retreat. The distance from the firing-line to the reserve increases with the size of the reserve.

500. When the situation is no longer in doubt, where should the reserve be held?

In rear of the flank which is most in danger or offers the best

Digitized by Google

opportunities for counter-attack; usually, the same flank best suits both purposes.

501. When may it be necessary to detach a part of the reserve, and how large should the detachment be?

In exceptional cases, on broad fronts, it may be necessary to detach a part of the reserve to protect the opposite flank. This detachment should be the smallest consistent with its purely protective mission.

502. How is the front of a defensive position apportioned?

The commander assigns to subordinates the front to be occupied by them; these, in turn, subdivide the front among their next lower units in the firing-line.

503. How is an extended position divided, if practicable?

Into sections, so that each has a field of fire naturally made distinct by the terrain.

What will ordinarily cause gaps to exist in the line?

Unfavorable and unimportant ground.

504. Upon what depends the size of the unit occupying each section?

The natural strength, front, and importance of the section. If practicable, battalions should be kept intact and assigned as units to sections or parts of sections.

505. What should be done when important dead space lies in front of one section?

An adjoining section should be instructed to cover it with fire when necessary, or machine guns should be concealed for the like purpose.

506. What disposition of the forces should be avoided?

Advanced posts, or any other form of unnecessary dispersion, should be avoided.

507. How is a prepared position occupied?

Unless the difficulty of moving troops into the position be great, most of the troops of the firing-line are held in rear of it until the infantry attack begins. The position itself is occupied by a small garrison only, with the necessary out-guards or patrols in front.

508. To what extent must troops be prepared to go to stop the attack?

Digitized by Google

Fire alone cannot be depended upon to stop the attack. The troops must be determined to resort to the bayonet, if necessary.

509. If a night attack or close approach of the enemy is expected, what preparations should be made?

Troops in a prepared position should strengthen the outguards and firing-line, and construct as numerous and effective obstacles as possible. Supports and local reserves should move close to the firing-line, and should, with the firing-line, keep bayonets fixed. If practicable, the front should be illuminated, preferably from the flanks of the position or section.

510. What kind of action is used in resisting night attacks?

Only short-range fire is of any value. The bayonet is the chief reliance.

COUNTER-ATTACK.

511. Describe the difference in use between the passive and offensive defense.

The passive defense should be assumed only when circumstances force it. Only the offensive wins.

512. What is the object of an active defense, and how can it be attained?

An active defense seeks a favorable decision; a favorable decision cannot be expected without counter-attack.

513. What kind of a passive defense is generally out of the question?

One in a position whose flanks are not protected by natural obstacles.

514. Where the defense is assumed with a view to making a counter-attack, how are the troops disposed?

The troops for the counter-attack should be held in reserve until the time arrives for such attack. The defensive line should be held by as few troops as possible, in order that the force for the offensive may be as large as possible. The force for the counter-attack should be held echeloned in rear of the flank which offers the greatest advantage for the proposed attack.

515. When and how should the counter-attack be made?

The counter-attack should be made vigorously and at the proper time. It will usually be made: first, by launching the reserve against the enemy's flank when his attack is in full progress;

Digitized by Google

this is the most effective form of counter-attack; second, straight to the front by the firing-line and supports after repulsing the enemy's attack and demoralizing him with pursuing fire; or, third, by the troops in rear of the firing-line when the enemy has reached the defensive position and is in disorder.

516. What is the use of minor counter-attacks?

They are sometimes necessary in order to drive the enemy from important positions gained by him.

DELAYING ACTION.

517. What are the important considerations when a position is taken merely to delay the enemy and to withdraw before becoming closely engaged?

First, the enemy should be forced to deploy early. The field of fire should therefore be good at distances from 500 to 1,200 yards or more; a good field of fire at close range is not necessary. Second, the ground in rear of the position should favor the withdrawal of the firing-line by screening the troops from the enemy's view and fire as soon as the position is vacated.

518. What kind of a firing-line is used, and how are supports and reserves used?

A thin firing-line using much ammunition will generally answer the purpose. Supports are needed chiefly to protect the flanks. The reserve should be posted well in rear to assist in the withdrawal of the firing-line.

519. What arm is especially valuable to a delaying force?

The artillery.

MEETING ENGAGEMENTS.

520. How are meeting engagements characterized?

By the necessity for hasty reconnaissance or the almost total absence of reconnaissance; by the necessity for rapid deployment, frequently under fire; and usually by the absence of trenches or other artificial cover.

What results from these conditions?

They give further advantages to the offensive.

521. How may one tell beforehand the proper general action to be taken on meeting the enemy?

The whole situation will usually indicate it.

Digitized by Google

522. How much fresh information can be expected, and what must be relied upon?

Very little, and the boldness, initiative, and determination of the commander must be relied upon.

523. To whom does a meeting engagement afford an ideal opportunity?

To the commander who has intuition and quick decision and who is willing to take long chances. His opponent is likely to be over-cautious.

524. How much information is a commander warranted in waiting for before taking final action?

It depends entirely upon his mission. One situation may demand a blind attack; another may demand rapid, partial deployment for attack, but careful and time-consuming reconnaissance before the attack is launched.

525. To which side does a great advantage accrue?

To that side which can deploy the faster.

What formation becomes more pronounced in its advantages with the size of the command?

A close-order formation, favoring rapid deployment.

526. What conditions and principles apply to the attack?

The first troops to deploy will be able to attack with longer firing-lines and weaker supports than are required in the ordinary case. But if the enemy succeeds in deploying a strong defensive line, the attack must be strengthened accordingly before it is wasted.

527. What is the action of the leading troops?

If the situation warrants the advance, the leading troops seek to deploy faster than the enemy, to reach his flanks, check his deployment, and get information. In any event, they seek to cover the deployment of their own troops in rear—especially the artillery—and to seize important ground.

528. When a long column meets the enemy, where should its commander be, and what action should be taken?

With the advance guard, to receive information promptly and to reconnoiter. If he decides to fight, the advance guard must hold the enemy while the commander formulates a plan of action, issues the necessary orders, and deploys the main body. Meantime, the column should be closing up, either in mass or to form line of col-

Digitized by Google

umns so that the deployment, when determined upon, may be made more promptly.

529. What does the action of the advance guard depend upon?

Prior to the receipt of orders, it depends upon the situation; whether to attack determinedly or only as a feint, or to assume the defensive, depends upon the strength of the advance guard, the terrain, the character of the hostile force encountered, and the mission and intentions of the commander of the whole.

530. If the enemy is beforehand or more aggressive, or if the advance guard is too weak, what may be necessary?

To put the elements of the main body into action as fast as they arrive, in order to check him.

Why should this method be avoided, and when are the best results obtained?

It prevents the formation and execution of a definite plan and compels piecemeal action. The best results are obtained when the main body is used as a whole.

WITHDRAWAL FROM ACTION.

531. What is the price of the withdrawal of a defeated force?

It can generally be effected only at a heavy cost.

What conditions make it advisable to withdraw, and what disposition of the forces must be attempted in withdrawing?

When it is no longer possible to give the action a favorable turn and the necessity for withdrawal arises, every effort must be made to place distance and a rear guard between the enemy and the defeated troops.

532. What arms give assistance in the withdrawal?

Artillery gives especially valuable assistance. The long-range fire of machine guns should also be employed. Cavalry assists the withdrawal by charging the pursuing troops or by taking flank positions and using fire-action.

533. If an intact reserve remains, how should it be used?

It should be placed in a covering position, preferably on a flank, to check the pursuit, and thus enable the defeated troops to withdraw beyond reach of hostile fire.

Where should the reserve take a covering position?

At some distance from the main action, but close enough to

Digitized by Google

bring the withdrawing troops quickly under the protection of its fire. It should have a good field of fire at effective ranges, and should facilitate its own safe and timely withdrawal.

534. What part of the firing-line should be withdrawn first?

If the general line is divided, by terrain or by organization, into two or more parts, the firing-line of that part in the least danger from pursuit should be withdrawn first. A continuous firing-line whose parts are dependent upon one another for fire-support should be withdrawn as a whole, retiring by echelon at the beginning of the withdrawal.

As soon as the troops are beyond the reach of hostile fire, what must be done?

Every effort must be made to restore the organizations, regain control, and form column of march. As fast as possible, without delaying the march, companies and the larger units should be reformed, so that the command will again be well in hand.

535. What should the commander of the whole do?

Having given orders for the withdrawal, he should go to the rear, select a rendezvous point, and devote himself to the reorganization of his command.

What conditions govern the selection of the rendezvous point?

It should be selected with regard to the natural channels of movement approximately straight to the rear. It should be distant from the battle-field, and should facilitate the gathering and protection of the command.

SUMMARY.

536. State the fourteen principles governing combat.

1. Avoid combats that offer no chance of victory or other valuable results.
2. Make every effort for the success of the general plan and avoid spectacular plays that have no bearing on the general result.
3. Have a definite plan and carry it out vigorously. Do not vacillate.
4. Do not attempt complicated maneuvers.
5. Keep the command in hand; avoid undue extension and dispersion.
6. Study the ground, and direct the advance in such a way as

Digitized by Google

to take advantage of all available cover, and thereby diminish losses.

7. Never deploy until the purpose and proper direction are known.

8. Deploy enough men for the immediate task in hand; hold out the rest, and avoid undue haste in committing them to the action.

9. Flanks must be protected, either by reserves, fortifications, or the terrain.

10. In a decisive action, gain and keep fire-superiority.

11. Keep up reconnaissance.

12. Use the reserve, but not until needed, or a very favorable opportunity for its use presents itself. Keep some reserve as long as practicable.

13. Do not hesitate to sacrifice the command, if the result is worth the cost.

14. Spare the command all unnecessary hardship and exertion.

Digitized by Google

Miscellaneous.

MACHINE GUN.

537. What kind of weapons must machine guns be considered?
Weapons of emergency.

What renders them of great value?
At critical, though infrequent, periods of an engagement their effectiveness, combined with their mobility, renders them of great value.

538. Describe their use.
When operating against infantry only, they can be used to a great extent throughout the combat as circumstances may indicate, but they are quickly rendered powerless by efficient field artillery, and will promptly draw artillery fire whenever they open. Hence their use in engagement between large commands must be for short periods and at times when their great effectiveness will be most valuable.

539. Where should machine guns be placed in the march, and why?
With the advance guard. In meeting engagements they will be of great value in assisting their own advance, or in checking the advance of the enemy, and will have considerable time to operate before hostile artillery fire can silence them.

What caution must be exercised?
Care must be taken not to leave them too long in action.

540. Where else are machine guns valuable?
To a rear guard which seeks to check a vigorous pursuit or to gain time.

541. How are they used in attack.
In attack, if fire of position is practicable, they are of great value. In this case fire should not be opened by the machine guns until the attack is well advanced. At a critical period in the attack,

Digitized by Google

such fire, if suddenly and unexpectedly opened, will greatly assist the advancing line. The fire must be as heavy as possible and must be continued until masked by friendly troops, or until the hostile artillery finds the machine guns.

542. How are machine guns used in defense?

In the same general manner as described above for the attack. Concealment and patient waiting for critical moments and exceptional opportunities are the special characteristics of the machine-gun service in decisive action.

543. As part of the reserve, how are machine guns used?

As part of the reserve, machine guns have special importance. If they are with the troops told off to protect the flanks, and if they are well placed, they will often produce decisive results against a hostile turning movement. They are especially qualified to cover a withdrawal or make a captured position secure.

544. Should machine guns be assigned to the firing-line of an attack?

No; they should be so placed that fire directed upon them is not likely to fall upon the firing-line.

545. What is the effect of machine-gun fire against troops?

A skirmish-line cannot advance by walking or running when hostile machine guns have the correct range and are ready to fire. Machine-gun fire is not specially effective against troops lying on the ground or crawling.

546. How should infantry alone conduct itself when opposed by machine guns?

The infantry must silence the machine guns before it can advance. It should concentrate a large number of rifles on each gun in turn and until it has silenced it.

AMMUNITION SUPPLY.

547. Where is the method of supplying ammunition to the combat trains explained?

In Field Service Regulations.

548. What is the combat train, and who is responsible for its use?

It is the immediate reserve supply of the battalion, and the major is responsible for its use. He will take measures to insure the

Digitized by Google

maintenance of the prescribed allowance at all times. In the absence of instructions, he will cause the train to march immediately in rear of his battalion, and upon separating from it to enter an engagement, will cause the ammunition therein to be issued. When emptied, he will direct that the wagons proceed to the proper rendezvous to be filled. Ordinarily, a rendezvous is appointed for each brigade, and the necessary number of wagons sent forward to it from the ammunition column.

549. When refilled, where do the combat wagons go?

They will join their battalions, or, if the latter be engaged, will join or establish communication with the regimental reserve.

550. What are company commanders responsible for?

That the belts of the men in their companies are kept filled at all times, except when the ammunition is being expended in action. In the firing-line, the ammunition of the dead and wounded should be secured whenever practicable.

551. What ammunition will ordinarily be expended first, and what will be kept as a reserve?

That in the bandoleers. Thirty rounds in the right pocket section of the belt will be held as a reserve, to be expended only when ordered by an officer.

552. When necessary, how will ammunition be re-supplied to the firing-line?

It will be sent forward with reinforcements, generally from the regimental reserve. Men will never be sent back from the firing-line for ammunition. Men sent forward with ammunition remain with the firing-line.

553. What is done as soon as possible after an engagement?

The belts of the men and the combat wagons are re-supplied to their normal capacities. Ammunition which cannot be re-loaded on combat wagons will be piled up in a convenient place and left under guard.

MOUNTED SCOUTS.

554. How should the mounted scouts be trained and used?

They should be thoroughly trained in patrolling and reconnaissance. They are used for communication with neighboring troops, for patrolling off the route of march, for march outposts, outpost patrols, combat patrols, reconnaissance ahead of columns, etc.

Digitized by Google

Their further use is, in general, confined to escort and messenger duty. They should be freely used for all these purposes, but for these purposes only.

555. When are the mounted scouts of special importance to covering detachments?

When infantry is acting alone, or when the cavalry of a mixed command has been sent to a distance, the mounted scouts are of special importance to covering detachments, and should be used to make the reconnaissance, which would otherwise fall to cavalry.

556. For what purpose should scouts be used in preference to other troops as much as possible, and how may they be used when not needed for mounted duty?

In reconnaissance. When not needed for mounted duty, they should be employed for necessary mounted patrolling.

557. How should battalion staff officers be specially trained, and why?

In patrolling and reconnaissance work, in order that they may be available when a mounted officer's patrol is required.

NIGHT OPERATIONS.

558. What are the advantages and disadvantages of night operations?

By employing night operations, troops make use of the cover of darkness to minimize losses from hostile fire, or to escape observation. The disadvantage is, that control is difficult and confusion frequently unavoidable.

For what purposes may night operations be necessary?

To gain time, to take advantage of darkness in order to assault from a point gained during the day, or to approach a point from which a daylight assault is to be made, or to effect both the approach and the assault.

559. Why should offensive and defensive night operations be frequently practiced?

In order that troops may learn to cover ground in the dark and arrive at a destination quietly and in good order, and in order to train officers in the necessary operations and reconnaissance.

What kind of formations should be employed?

Only simple and well-appointed formations.

Digitized by Google

How should the troops be trained?

In the necessary details—*e. g.*, night patrolling, night marching, and communication at night.

560. What preparations should be made?

The ground to be traversed should be studied by daylight and, if practicable, at night. It should be cleared of hostile detachments before dark, and, if practicable, should be occupied by covering troops. Orders must be formulated with great care and clearness. Each unit must be given a definite objective and direction, and care must be exercised to avoid collision between units. Whenever contact with the enemy is anticipated, a distinctive badge should be worn by all.

561. How should the preparations be made and the operation be conducted?

Preparations must be made with secrecy. When the movement is started, and not until then, the officers and men should be acquainted with the general design, the composition of the whole force, and should be given such additional information as will insure cooperation and eliminate mistakes. During the movement, every precaution must be taken to keep secret the fact that troops are abroad. Unfriendly guides must frequently be impressed; these should be secured against escape, outcry, or deception. Fire-action should be avoided in offensive operations. In general, pieces should not be loaded. Men must be trained to rely upon the bayonet and to use it aggressively.

562. How should long night marches be made and conducted?

They should be made only over well-defined routes. March discipline must be rigidly enforced. The troops should be marched in as compact a formation as practicable, with the usual covering detachments. Advance and rear-guard distances should be greatly reduced. They are shortest when the mission is an offensive one. The connecting files are numerous.

563. How does a night advance, made with a view to making an attack by day, usually terminate?

With the hasty construction of intrenchments in the dark.

How should such an advance be timed?

So as to allow an hour or more of darkness for intrenching.

How should an advance that is to terminate in an assault at the break of day be timed, and why?

Digitized by Google

So that the troops will not arrive long before the assault is to be made; otherwise, the advantage or partial surprise will be lost, and the enemy will be allowed to reinforce the threatened point.

564. To what is the night attack ordinarily confined?

To small forces or to minor engagements in a general battle, or to seizure of positions occupied by covering or advanced detachments. Decisive results are not often obtained.

What troops are unfit for night attacks or for night operations demanding the exercise of skill and care?

Poorly disciplined and untrained troops.

How can attacking troops advance at night?

They can advance close to the enemy in compact formations and without suffering loss from hostile artillery or infantry fire.

Of what is the defender ignorant?

The strength or direction of the attack.

What will often be the result of a vigorous bayonet charge in the dark?

The force which makes it will often throw a much larger force into disorder.

565. What reconnaissance should be made, and by whom?

Reconnaissance to asecrtain the position and strength of the enemy and to study the terrain to be traversed. Officers who are to participate in the attack should conduct this reconnaissance. Reconnaissance at night is especially valuable. Features that are distinguishable at night should be carefully noted, and their distances from the enemy, from the starting-point of the troops, and from other important points, should be made known.

What should the preparations have in view?

As complete a surprise as possible. An attack once begun must be carried to its conclusion, even if the surprise is not as complete as was planned or anticipated.

566. Upon what does the time of night at which the attack should be made depend?

The object sought. If a decisive attack is intended, it will generally yield the best results if made just before daylight. If the object is merely to gain an intrenched position for further operations, an earlier hour is necessary in order that the position gained may be intrenched under cover of darkness.

Digitized by Google

567. How should the troops be formed for attack?

Their formation must be simple. It should be carefully effected, and the troops verified at a safe distance from the enemy. The attacking troops should be formed in compact lines and with strong supports at short distances. The reserve should be far enough in rear to avoid being drawn into the action until the commander so desires. Bayonets are fixed; pieces are not loaded.

What is the effect of darkness on the fire?

It causes the fire to be wild and ineffective.

How should the troops march and fight?

The attacking troops should march steadily on the enemy without firing, but should be prepared and determined to fight vigorously with the bayonet. In advancing to the attack, the aim should be to get as close as possible to the enemy before being discovered, then to trust to the bayonet. If the assault is successful, preparations must be made at once to repel a counter-attack.

568. On the defensive, when should preparations be made to resist night attacks, what preparations are made, and how is the defense conducted?

They are made by daylight whenever such attacks are to be feared. Obstacles placed in front of a defensive position are especially valuable to the defense at night. Many forms of obstacles which would give an attacker little concern in the daytime become serious hindrances at night. After dark the foreground should be illuminated whenever practicable, and strong patrols should be pushed to the front. When it is learned that the enemy is approaching, the trenches are filled and the supports moved close to the firing-line. Supports fix bayonets, but do not load. Whenever practicable and necessary, they should be used for counter-attacks, preferably against a hostile flank. The defendant should open fire as soon as results may be expected. This fire may avert or postpone the bayonet combat, and it warns all supporting troops. It is not likely that fire alone can stop the attack. The defender must be resolved to fight with the bayonet. Ordinarily, fire will not be effective at ranges exceeding fifty yards. A white rag around the muzzle of the rifle will assist in sighting the piece when the front sight is not visible.

Digitized by Google

INFANTRY AGAINST CAVALRY.

569. What is the effect of a cavalry charge against infantry?

It can accomplish little against infantry, even in inferior numbers, unless the latter are surprised, become panic-stricken, run away, or cannot use their rifles.

570. How is a charge received and checked?

A charge from the front is easily checked by a well-directed and sustained fire. If the charge is directed against the flank of the firing-line, the supports, reserve, or machine guns should stop it. If this disposition is impracticable, part of the line must meet the charge by a timely change of front. If the flank company or companies in the firing-line execute platoons right, the successive firing-lines can ordinarily break a charge against the flank. If the cavalry line passes through the firing-line, the latter will be little damaged, if the men retain their presence of mind. They should be on the watch for succeeding cavalry lines, and leave those that have passed through to friendly troops in rear.

571. What is the best position for men to meet a charge?

Men standing are in the best position, but other considerations may compel them to take the prone position.

572. In a melee, what weapon does the infantryman use?

With his bayonet, he has at least an even chance with the cavalryman, but the main dependence of infantry is rifle-fire.

What formation should be used, and how are the sights set?

Any formation is suitable that permits the free use of the necessary number of rifles. Ordinarily, there will be no time to change or set sights. Fire at will at battle-sight should be used, whatever the range may be. It will usually be unwise to open fire at long range.

573. When an infantry column encounters cavalry, what should it do?

Deploy at once. If attacked from the head or rear of the column, and if time is pressing, it may form a succession of skirmish-lines. Infantry, by deploying fifty or one hundred yards in rear of an obstacle, may check cavalry and hold it under fire beyond effective pistol-range. In any situation, to try to escape the issue by running is the worst and the most dangerous course the infantry can adopt.

Digitized by Google

574. What course should infantry pursue in attacking dismounted cavalry?

It should close rapidly, and endeavor to prevent remounting. Infantry which adopts this course will not be seriously checked by delaying cavalry. Every effort should be made to locate and open fire on the led horses.

INFANTRY AGAINST ARTILLERY.

575. What is the result of a frontal attack by infantry against artillery?

It has little chance of succeeding, unless it can be started from cover at comparatively short range. Beyond short range, the frontal fire of infantry has little effect against the artillery personnel because of their protective shields.

What is the effect of machine-gun fire?

It will have greater effect because their cone of fire is more compact, but, on the other hand, they will have fewer opportunities, and they are limited to fire-attack only.

As a rule, what is the best weapon against hostile artillery?

One's own artillery.

576. In what manner should infantry attack artillery?

Artillery attacked in flank by infantry can be severely damaged. Oblique or flank fire will begin to have decisive effect when delivered at effective range from a point to one side of the artillery's line of fire and distant from it by about one-half the range. Artillery is better protected on the side of the caisson.

577. When guns are out of ammunition, but otherwise secure against infantry attack, what action may be taken against them?

They may be immobilized by fire which will prevent their withdrawal, or by locating and driving off their limbers; or they may be kept out of action by fire which will prevent the receipt of ammunition.

578. What is the condition of artillery when limbered?

It is helpless against infantry fire. If caught at effective range while coming into action or while limbering, artillery can be severely punished by infantry fire.

In attacking artillery that is trying to escape, what is the best target?

The wheel-horses.

Digitized by Google

ARTILLERY SUPPORTS.

579. What is the purpose of the artillery support?

To guard the artillery against surprise or attack.

How is the artillery protected?

On the march or in action, it is ordinarily so placed as to be amply protected by the infantry. Infantry always protects artillery in its neighborhood.

580. What is the rule as to the detail of an artillery support?

A support is not necessary except when the artillery is separated from the main body or occupies a position in which its flanks are not protected. The detail of a support will be avoided whenever possible.

581. What is the formation of an artillery support on the march, and what precautions are taken?

Its formation depends upon circumstances. On the march, it may often be necessary to provide advance, flank, and rear protection. The country must be thoroughly reconnoitered by patrols within long rifle-range.

582. In action, what is the formation and location of the artillery support?

Such as to gain and give timely information of the enemy's approach, and to offer actual resistance to the enemy beyond effective rifle-range of the artillery's flanks. It should not be close enough to the artillery to suffer from fire directed at the artillery. In most cases, a position somewhat to the flank and rear best fulfills these conditions.

583. With what is the support commander charged, and how should he conduct himself as regards the artillery commander?

The support commander is charged only with the protection of the artillery. The tactical employment of each arm rests with its commander. The two should co-operate.

INTRENCHMENTS.

(Plate 5.)

584. When does infantry intrench itself?

Ordinarily, whenever it is compelled to halt for a considerable time in the presence of the enemy. Infantry charged with a resisting mission should intrench whenever there is any likelihood that the cover constructed will be of use.

Digitized by Google

585. Who plans and constructs the field-works for infantry?

Except in permanent fortifications or in fortifications prepared long in advance, the infantry does the work itself.

When performing their duties in this connection, what should officers bear in mind?

That profile and construction are simple matters compared with location and correct tactical use.

586. What do intrenchments enable a commander to do?

To hold a position with the least possible number of men and to prolong his line or increase his reserve.

For what purpose are they constructed?

With a view to giving cover which will diminish losses, but they must not be so built or placed as to interfere with the free use of the rifle. Fire-effect is the first consideration.

587. Upon what does the trace of a fire-trench or a system of fire-trenches depend?

Upon the ground and the proposed density of the entire firing-line.

How are the trenches laid out?

In company lengths, if possible. Adjoining trenches should afford each other mutual support. The flanks and important gaps in the line should be protected by fire-trenches echeloned in rear. (Fig. 6.)

588. How is the trace located?

Lie on the ground at intervals, and select the best field of fire consistent with the requirements of the situation.

How should a profile be selected?

One should be selected which will permit the fire to sweep the foreground, require the minimum of labor and time, and permit the best concealment. No fixed type can be prescribed. The type must be selected with due regard to the terrain, the enemy, time, tools, materials, soil, etc.

589. What is meant by "hasty cover," and how is it used?

With the intrenching tool, troops can quickly throw up a low parapet about three feet thick, which will furnish considerable cover against rifle-fire, but scarcely any against shrapnel. Such cover is frequently of value to an attack that is temporarily unable to continue. In time, and particularly at night, it may be developed into a deep fire or cover-trench.

Digitized by Google

590. How should fire-trenches be placed and constructed?

So as to give a good field of fire and to give the troops protection behind the vertical wall, preferably with some head or overhead cover. They should be concealed or inconspicuous, in order to avoid artillery fire or to decrease its accuracy. They should have natural or artificial communication with their supports, but in establishing the trace this is a secondary consideration.

Describe the simplest form of fire-trench, and state the time of construction.

It is deep and narrow and has a flat, concealed parapet. (Fig. 1.) In ordinary soil, and on a basis of two reliefs and tasks of five feet, in can be constructed in about two hours with intrenching tools. This trench affords fair cover for troops subjected to fire, but not actually firing.

The simple trench should be planned with what in view?

When it is probable that time will permit elaboration, the simple trench should be planned with a view to developing it ultimately into a more complete form. (Figs. 2 and 3.) Devices should be added to increase the security of the trench and the comfort of the men.

What kind of a trench may be the one best suited to the soil and other conditions, and what is its special advantage?

Where the excavated earth is easily removed, a fire-trench without parapet may be the one best suited to the soil and other conditions affecting the choice of profile. (Fig. 4.) The enemy's infantry, as well as his artillery, will generally have great difficulty in seeing this type of trench.

In very difficult soil, if the time is short, what may be necessary?

To dig a wider, shallower trench with a higher parapet.

What are the advantages and disadvantages of head-cover, notches, and loopholes?

They are of value to troops when firing, but many forms weaken and disclose the location of the parapet. Filled sandbags kept in the trench when the men are not firing may be thrown on the parapet to form notches or loopholes when the troops in the trench open fire and concealment of the trench is no longer necessary or possible.

Digitized by Google

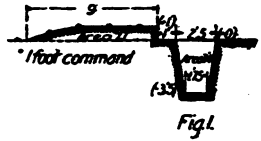


Fig. 1.

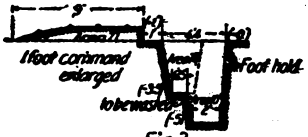


Fig. 2.

Plate V

Fig. 3.

Fig. 4.

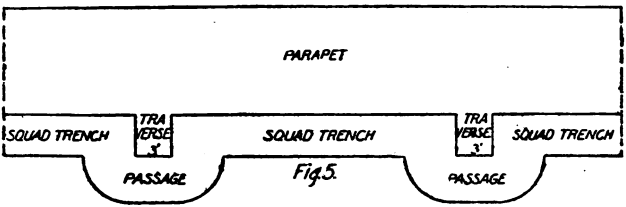
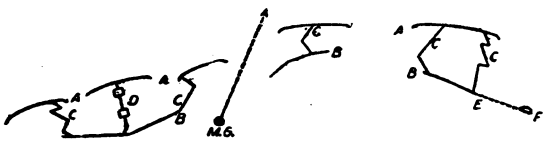


Fig. 5.



Possible arrangement of 2 Bns. of Inf. intrenched (Regimental Reserve of 1 Bn. not shown)

A Firing trenches.

B Cover trenches.

C Communicating trench; *D* same traversed; *E* communicating way

F Closed supporting point for flank protection

MG. Possible position for machine guns, concealed from front

Fig 6

Digitized by Google

What is the use of observation stations, and where are they located?

By means of them, the maximum rest and security is afforded the troops. Stations are best located in the angles of traverses or at the end of the trench.

591. Where the nature of the position makes it advisable to construct traverses at regular intervals, what is done?

It is generally best to construct a section of trench for each squad, with traverses between squads. (Fig. 5.)

592. Where are cover-trenches placed?

As closely as practicable to their respective fire-trenches. Where natural cover is not available, each fire-trench should have artificial cover in rear for its support—either a cover-trench of its own or one in common with an adjoining fire-trench.

Describe the cover-trench.

The cover-trench is simple and rectangular in profile. Concealment is indispensable. It is generally concealed by the contour of the ground or by natural features; but, to guard against hostile searching fire overhead, cover is frequently advisable. Cover-trenches should be made as comfortable as possible. It will often be advisable to make them extensive enough to provide cooking and resting facilities for garrisons of the corresponding fire-trenches.

593. Describe communicating trenches, their use and elaboration.

Communicating trenches are frequently necessary in order to connect fire-trenches with their corresponding cover-trenches where natural covered communication is impracticable. They are generally rectangular in profile, deep, and narrow. They are traversed or zigzagged to escape enfilade. Returns or pockets should be provided for use as latrines, store-rooms, dressing-stations, passing-points for troops, etc. Cover from observation while passing through the trench may insure against loss as effectively as material cover from the enemy's fire. Communicating ways, naturally or artificially screened from the enemy's view, sometimes provide sufficient cover for the passage of troops.

594. What is the use of dummy trenches?

They frequently draw the enemy's attention and fire, and thus protect the true fire-trench.

What type of trench is used for a dummy trench?

Digitized by Google

Any type is suitable which presents to the enemy the appearance of a true trench imperfectly concealed.

595. When it is uncertain whether time will permit the completion of all the work planned, what should be done?

The work should proceed with due regard to the order of importance of the several operations.

State the order of importance, ordinarily.

1. Clearing foreground to improve the field of fire and construction of fire-trench.
2. Head or overhead cover; concealment.
3. Placing obstacles and recording ranges.
4. Cover-trenches for supports and local reserves.
5. Communicating trenches.
6. Widening and deepening the trenches; interior conveniences.

Digitized by Google

Minor Warfare.

596. What does minor warfare embrace?

Both regular and irregular operations.

Define regular operations.

They consist of minor actions involving small bodies of trained and organized troops on both sides.

What kind of tactics are employed?

In general, those prescribed for the smaller units.

597. Describe irregular operations.

They consist of actions against unorganized or partially unorganized forces, acting in independent or semi-independent bodies. Such bodies have little or only crude training, and are under nominal and loose leadership and control. They assemble, roam about, and disperse at will. They endeavor to win by stealth or by force of superior numbers, employing ambuscades, sudden dashes or rushes, and hand-to-hand fighting.

How do troops operate against such an enemy?

They usually do so in small units, such as platoons, detachments, or companies, and the tactics employed must be adapted to meet the requirements of the situation. Frequently, the enemy's own methods may be employed to advantage. In general, such operations should not be undertaken hastily; every preparation should be made to strike suddenly and to inflict the maximum punishment.

598. In general, what will be the state of affairs as regards the service of information, reconnaissance, marching, and camping?

The service of information will be insufficient; adequate reconnaissance will rarely be practicable. March and bivouac formations must be such as to admit of rapid deployment and fire-action in any direction.

599. How may troops be marched in the open country, where surprise is not probable?

In column of squads, preceded within sight by a squad as advance party.

600. In close country, where surprise is possible, what conditions exist, and what principles govern minor warfare?

Digitized by Google

The troops must be held in a close formation. The use of flank patrols becomes difficult. Occasionally an advance party—never less than a squad—may be sent out. In general, however, such a party accomplishes little, since an enemy intent on surprise will permit it to pass unmolested, and will fall upon the main body. Under such conditions, especially when the road or trail is narrow, the column of twos or files is a convenient formation, the officers placing themselves in the column so as to divide it into nearly equal parts. If rushed from a flank, such a column will be in readiness to face and fire toward either or both flanks, the ranks being back to back; if rushed from the front, the head of the column may be deployed, the rest of the column closing up to support it and protect its flanks and rear. In any event, the men should be taught to take some form of closed back-to-back formation.

601. Describe another formation for minor warfare, and state its advantages.

The column may often be broken into two or more approximately equal detachments separated on the march by distances of fifty to one hundred yards. As a rule, the detachments should not consist of less than twenty-five men each. With this arrangement of the column, it will rarely be possible for an enemy to close simultaneously with all of the detachments, one or more being left unengaged and under control to support those engaged or to inflict severe punishment upon the enemy when he is repulsed.

602. What arrangements should be made for camping and security of the camp?

The site for camp or bivouac should be selected with special reference to economical and effective protection against surprise. Double sentinels are posted on the avenues of approach, and the troops sleep in instant readiness for action. When practicable, troops should be instructed in advance as to what they are to do in case of attack at night.

603. What kind of operations are frequently advisable, and why?

Night operations. With the small forces employed, control is not difficult. Irregular troops rarely provide proper camp protection, and they may frequently be surprised and severely punished by a properly conducted night march and attack.

Digitized by Google

PATROLS.

604. What do the following paragraphs relate to in particular and apply to?

To the conduct of the patrol and its leader, and apply to patrols employed in covering detachments as well as in combat reconnaissance.

605. What is a patrol, and what is its mission?

A patrol is a detachment sent out from its command to gain information of the country or of the enemy, or to prevent the enemy from gaining information. In special cases, patrols may be given other missions than these.

606. What must the commander have clearly in his mind, and why?

The purpose for which the patrol is to be used, in order that he may determine its proper strength, select its leader and give the latter proper instructions.

What general rule governs the sending out of a patrol?

It should be sent out for one definite purpose only.

607. What determines the strength of a patrol?

The strength of a patrol varies from two or three men to a company. It should be strong enough to accomplish its purpose and no stronger. If the purpose is to gain information only, a small patrol is better than a large one. The former conceals itself more readily and moves less conspicuously. For observing from some point in plain view of the command, or for visiting or reconnoitering between outguards, two men are sufficient. If messages are to be sent back, the patrol must be strong enough to furnish the probable number of messengers without reducing the patrol to less than two men. If hostile patrols are likely to be met and must be driven off, the patrol must be strong. In friendly territory a weaker patrol may be used than would be used for the corresponding purpose in hostile territory.

608. What kind of a leader is selected for the patrol?

It depends upon the importance of the work in hand.

For what kind of patrolling will the average soldier be a competent leader?

Digitized by Google

Patrolling between the groups or along the lines of an outpost, or for the simpler patrols sent out from a covering detachment.

609. What kind of a leader is needed for an information or distant patrol?

He must be specially selected; he must be able to cover large areas with few men; he must be able to estimate the strength of hostile forces, to report intelligently as to their dispositions, to read indications, and to judge as to the importance of the information gained. He must possess endurance, courage, and good judgment.

What kind of instructions and information should be given a patrol leader?

His instructions should be full and clear. He must be made to understand what is required of him, where to go, and when to return. He should be given such information of the enemy and the country as may be of value to him. He should be informed as to the general location of his own forces, particularly of those with whom he may come in contact. If possible, he should be given a map of the country he is to traverse, and in many cases his route may be specified.

How should a patrol leader be equipped?

Besides his arms and ammunition, the patrol leader should have a compass, a watch, a pencil, a note-book, and, when practicable, field-message blanks, and a map of the country.

What preparations does the patrol leader make?

He assembles the men detailed for the patrol. He inspects their arms and ammunition, and satisfies himself that they are in suitable condition for the duty. He sees that none has any papers, maps, etc., that would be of value to the enemy if captured. He sees that their accouterments do not glisten or rattle when they move. He then repeats his instructions to the patrol and assures himself that every man understands them. He explains the signals to be used, and satisfies himself that they are understood. He designates a man to take his place should he be disabled.

610. How must the formation and movements of the patrol be regulated?

So as to render probable the escape of at least one man should the patrol encounter a superior force. The formation will depend upon the nature of the ground traversed and the cover afforded. The leader must adopt the formation and measures best suited to

Digitized by Google

the accomplishment of his object. In general, it should have the formation of a main body, with advance, rear, and flank guards, though each be represented only by a single man.

611. What should be the distances separating the members of the patrol?

They vary according to the ground. If too close together, they see no more than one man; if too widely separated, they are likely to be lost to the control of the leader. With a patrol of four or five men, the distances may vary from twenty-five to fifty yards; with a larger patrol, they may be as great as one hundred yards. At times, a column of files, separated by the distances prescribed, is a satisfactory formation.

612. How does the patrol conduct itself on the march?

The country must be carefully observed as the patrol advances. In passing over a hill, the country beyond should first be observed by one man; houses, enclosures, etc., should be approached in a similar manner, or avoided entirely; woods should generally be reconnoitered in a thin skirmish-line.

613. How should hostile troops be observed, and what should patrol leaders know?

The strength and composition of hostile troops must be observed; if they cannot be counted, their strength may be estimated by the length of time a column consumes in passing a given point, or by the area covered, if in camp. Patrol leaders should know, if practicable, the uniforms, guidons, etc., of the enemy, as it will assist in determining the class of troops seen when no other means for doing so are available.

What often convey valuable information?

Insignia from the enemy's uniforms, picked up by the patrols, often convey valuable information by indicating what troops are in the vicinity.

614. When do patrols fight, and how?

Patrols avoid fighting, except in self-defense, or in order to prevent the enemy's patrols from gaining valuable information, or when necessary in order to accomplish their mission. In such cases a patrol should fight resolutely, even though inferior in numbers.

615. What should patrol leaders do as soon as they gain important information, and why?

Information gained by patrols is generally of no value, unless

Digitized by Google

received in time to be of use to the commander. Patrol leaders must therefore send back information of importance as soon as it is gained, unless the patrol itself is to return at once.

616. What should written messages contain, and what form should be used?

They should state the place, date, hour, and minute of their dispatch. The information contained in them should be clearly and concisely expressed. They should be signed by the patrol-leader. The authorized message-book should be used and the form therein adhered to.

617. How should an oral message be sent, and what should it contain?

The patrol leader should require the messenger to repeat it before starting back. In general, an oral message should cover but one point.

What is the general rule about messages being written or oral?

Except when there is little chance of error in transmission, messages should be written.

618. How many messengers should be sent at one time with the same message?

When in friendly territory, and not very far from friendly troops, one messenger is sufficient, unless the message is very important. In hostile territory, either two men should go together, or the message should be sent in duplicate by different routes.

619. How is the question as to whether the information gained is of sufficient importance to be reported at once, or may await the return of the patrol, decided?

It is a question which must be decided in each case. In case of reasonable doubt, it is generally better to send the report promptly. If the patrol leader has received proper instructions before starting out, and has the requisite ability to lead a patrol, he can generally decide such questions satisfactorily as they arise.

620. How far are infantry patrols sent from supporting troops?

They are generally used for work within two miles of supporting troops, but cases arise where they must go to greater distances.

621. How are patrols composed of mounted scouts conducted and trained?

Like cavalry patrols, and should be trained in accordance with the Cavalry Drill Regulations.

Digitized by Google

What should be used for distant patrolling?

A mounted patrol under an officer.

622. How does the leader control the movements of the patrol?

When necessary, he should make use of the arm signals, prescribed in Drill Regulations.

How is communication between members of a patrol effected?

On account of the short distances separating them, it is ordinarily effected quietly by word of mouth. When a member of a patrol is sent to a distant point, communication may be effected by means of simple prearranged signals.

How may the patrol leader communicate with the main body?

When practicable, by means of visual signaling.

Digitized by Google

PART III.

Marches and Camps.

MARCHES.

Training and Discipline.

623. What is it that constitutes the principal occupation of troops in campaign, and is one of the heaviest causes of loss?

Marching.

How may this loss be materially reduced?

By proper training and by the proper conduct of the march.

624. What should the training in infantry consist of?

Systematic physical exercises to develop the general physique, and of actual marching to accustom the men to the fatigue of bearing arms and equipment.

What should be done with troops before mobilization, and at the first opportunity after mobilization.

They should be kept in good physical condition and so practiced as to teach them thoroughly the principles of marching. At the first opportunity after mobilization the men should be hardened to cover long distances without loss.

625. What is the process of hardening the men to this work?

With new or untrained troops it must be gradual. Immediately after being mustered into the service, the physical exercises and marching should be begun. Ten-minute periods of vigorous setting-up exercises should be given three times a day to loosen and develop the muscles. One march should made each day with full equipment, beginning with a distance of two or three miles, and increasing the distance daily as the troops become hardened, until a full day's march under full equipment may be made without exhaustion.

Digitized by Google

626. How are long distances covered with untrained troops?

A long march should not be made with untrained troops. If a long distance must be covered in a few days, the first march should be short, the length being increased each succeeding day.

627. What attention and care should be shown the feet?

Special attention should be paid to the fitting of shoes and the care of the feet. Shoes should not be too wide or too short. Sores and blisters on the feet should be promptly dressed during halts. At the end of the march, feet should be bathed and dressed; the socks and, if practicable, the shoes should be changed.

628. How should water be used on the march?

The drinking of water on the march should be avoided. The thirst should be quenched before starting on the march and after arrival in camp. On the march the use of water should, in general, be confined to gargling the mouth and throat or to an occasional small drink at most.

629. What time of the day or night should marches begin?

Except for urgent reasons, marches should not begin before an hour after daylight; but if the distance to be covered necessitates either breaking camp before daylight or making camp after dark, it is better to do the former. Night marching should be avoided when possible.

630. What halts should be made during the march, and how are they varied?

A halt of fifteen minutes should be made after the first half or three-quarters of an hour of marching. The number and length of the halts may be varied, according to the weather, the condition of the roads, and the equipment carried by the men.

When the day's march is long, a halt of an hour should be made at noon, and the men allowed to eat.

631. How is the rate of march regulated and maintained?

It is regulated by the commander of the leading company of each regiment, or, if battalions be separated by greater than normal distances, by the commander of the leading company of each battalion. He should maintain a uniform rate, uninfluenced by the movements of troops or mounted men in front of him.

What change is made daily in the formation during the march?

Companies in battalion and battalions in the regiment ordinarily change position daily, so that each in turn leads.

Digitized by Google

632. How is the marching efficiency of an organization judged?

By the amount of straggling and elongation and the condition of the men at the end of the march.

How is undue elongation and straggling prevented?

An officer of each company marches in its rear.

When necessary for a man to fall out on account of sickness, what arrangements are made to take care of him?

He should be given a permit to fall out; this is presented to the surgeon, who will admit him to the ambulance, have him wait for the trains, or follow and rejoin his company at the first halt.

633. At what rate should troops march?

Special attention should be paid to the rate of march. It is greater for trained than for untrained troops, for small commands than for large ones, for lightly burdened than for heavily burdened troops. It is greater during cool than during hot weather. With trained troops, in commands of a regiment or less, marching over average roads, the rate should be from 2¾ to 3 miles per hour; with larger commands, carrying full equipment, the rate will be from 2 to 3½ miles per hour.

634. What is the marching capacity of trained infantry?

In small commands, it is from 20 to 25 miles per day; this distance will decrease as the size of the command increases. For a complete division, the distance can seldom exceed 12½ miles per day, unless the division camps in column.

635. What reduces the marching capacity of troops in large commands?

Faulty march orders and poor march discipline.

What should the march order contain?

Such instructions as will enable the troops to take their places in column promptly.

What details of the march should be carefully arranged?

Delay or confusion in troops taking their proper places in column should be investigated. On the other hand, organization commanders should be required to time their movements so that the troops will not be formed sooner than necessary. The halts and starts of the units of a column should be regulated by the watch and be simultaneous. Closing up during a halt, or changing gait to gain or lose distance, should be prohibited.

Where do the quartermaster sergeants, cooks, artificers, and company clerks march?

Digitized by Google

With the field train, under command of the supply officer in charge of the train.

PROTECTION OF THE MARCH.

General Considerations.

636. How is a column on the march in the vicinity of the enemy covered?

By detachments called "advance guards," "rear guards," or "flank guards."

What is the object of these covering detachments?

To facilitate the advance of the main body and to protect it from surprise or observation.

How do they facilitate the advance of the main body?

By promptly driving off small bodies of the enemy who seek to harass or delay it; by removing obstacles from the line of advance; by repairing roads, bridges, etc., thus enabling the main body to dvance uninterruptedly in convenient marching formations.

How do they protect the main body?

By preventing the enemy from firing into it when in close formation; by holding the enemy and enabling the main body to deploy before coming under effective fire; by preventing its size and condition from being observed by the enemy; and, in retreat, by gaining time for it to make its escape or to reorganize its forces.

637. What should be avoided in making details for covering detachments?

Tactical units should not be broken.

638. What should the march order of the whole command explain, specify, and direct?

It should explain the situation, and, among other things, detail the commander and troops for each covering detachment. It should specify the route to be taken and the distance to be maintained between the main body and its covering detachments. It should order such reconnaissance as the commander especially desires to have made.

What should the order of the ommander of a covering detachment contain?

It should clearly explain the situation to subordinates, assign the troops to the subdivisions, prescribe their distances, and order such special reconnaissance as may be deemed necessary in the beginning.

Digitized by Google

Where does the commander of an advance or flank guard march, and how does he conduct his detachment?

He marches well to the front, and, from time to time, orders such additional reconnaissance or makes such changes in his dispositions as the circumstances of the case demand.

Advance Guards.

639. What is an advance guard?

It is a detachment of the main body which precedes and covers it on the march.

640. What is the advance guard commander responsible for?

The formation and conduct of the advance guard.

What should he bear in mind?

That its purpose is to facilitate and protect the march of the main body.

How is its own security effected, its march maintained, and how does it act when the enemy attempts to block it?

Its own security must be effected by proper dispositions and reconnaissance, not by timid or cautious advance. It must advance at normal gait and search aggressively for information of the enemy. Its action, when the enemy attempts to block it with a large force, depends upon the situation and plans of the commander of the troops.

641. What is the strength of the advance guard?

It varies from one-twentieth to one-third of the main body—depending upon the size of the main body and the service expected of the advance guard.

642. What must be the formation of the advance guard?

Such that the enemy will be met first by a patrol, then in turn by one or more larger detachments, each capable of holding the enemy until the next in rear has time to deploy before coming under effective fire.

643. How is the advance guard divided?

Generally, an advance guard consisting of a battalion or more is divided primarily into the reserve and the support. When the advance guard consists of less than a battalion, the reserve is generally omitted.

Digitized by Google

644. What is the proportion between the reserve and the support?

In an advance guard consisting of two battalions or less the reserve and support, if both are used, are approximately equal; in larger advance guards the reserve is approximately two-thirds of the whole detachment.

Where are machine guns placed in advance guards?

In an advance guard consisting of one battalion the machine guns, if any, form part of the reserve; in an advance guard consisting of two or more battalions the machine guns form part of the support.

645. How is the support disposed?

It sends forward an advance party; the advance party, in turn, sends a patrol—called a "point"—still farther to the front. Patrols are sent out to the flanks when necessary. When the distance between parts of the advance guard or the nature of the country is such as to make direct communication difficult, connecting files march between the subdivisions to keep up communication. Each element of the column sends the necessary connecting files to the front.

646. How should a battalion acting as an advance guard be formed?

The reserve, two companies; the support, two companies; the advance party, three to eight squads (about a half-company), depending upon the strength of the companies and the reconnaissance to be made; the point, a non-commissioned officer and three or four men. Or the reserve may be omitted. In such case the advance party will consist of one company, preceded by a strong point. The remaining companies form the support.

647. What should be the distances separating the parts of an advance guard?

They vary according to the mission of the whole force, the size of the advance guard, the proximity and character of the enemy, the nature of the country, etc. They increase as the strength of the main body increases; they are less when operating in rolling, broken country than in open country; when in pursuit of a defeated enemy than against an aggressive foe; when operating against cavalry than when against infantry. If there be a mounted point, it should precede the dismounted point by 250 to 600 yards. The

Digitized by Google

advance party may be stronger when there is a mounted point in front. The infantry maintains its gait without reference to the mounted point, the latter regulating its march on the former.

648. What must be done to afford protection to an infantry column?

The country must be observed on each side of the road as far as the terrain affords positions for effective fire upon the column. If the country that it is necessary to observe be open to view from the road, reconnaissance is not necessary.

649. What reconnaissance is the advance guard responsible for?

That on both sides of the line of march. Special reconnaissance may be directed by the commander of the troops, or cavalry may be reconnoitering at considerable distances to the front and flanks, but this does not relieve the advance guard from the duty of local reconnaissance.

650. How is this reconnaissance effected?

By patrols sent out by the leading subdivisions of the advance guard. In a large advance guard the support commander orders the necessary reconnaissance. Patrols should be sent to the flanks when necessary to reconnoiter a specified locality, and should rejoin the column and their proper subdivision as soon as practicable. When the advance party is strong enough, the patrols should be sent out from it. When depleted by the patrols sent out, the advance party should be reinforced during a halt by men sent forward from the support. If it be impracticable to send patrols from the advance party, they will be sent from the support.

State several conditions under which flank patrols are used, and what troops should be used for this purpose.

Where the country is generally open to view, but localities in it might conceal an enemy of some size, reconnaissance is necessary. Where the road is exposed to fire and the view is restricted, a patrol should be sent to examine the country in the direction from which danger threatens. The object may be accomplished by sending patrols to observe from prominent points. When the ground permits and the necessity exists, patrols may be sent to march abreast of the column at distances which permit them to see important features not visible from the road. Mounted scouts or cavalry, when available, should be used for flank patrols.

Digitized by Google

651. What other formation may be the best means of covering the head and the flanks of the column?

A line of skirmishers extending for several hundred yards to both sides of the road and deployed at intervals of from ten to fifty yards. A column may thus protect itself when passing through country covered with high corn or similar vegetation. In such case, the vegetation forms a natural protection from rifle-fire beyond very short ranges.

652. What rules for the strength, formation, or conduct of advance guards can be given?

No fixed rules can be given. Each case must be treated to meet conditions as they exist. That solution is generally the best which, with the fewest men and unbroken units, amply protects the column and facilitates the advance.

Rear Guards.

653. What is a rear guard, and what its formation?

A rear guard is a detachment detailed to protect the main body from attack in rear. In a retreat, it checks pursuit, and enables the main body to increase the distance between it and the enemy and to re-form, if disorganized. The general formation is that of an advance guard reversed.

654. How should the commander conduct the rear guard?

He should take advantage of every favorable opportunity to delay the pursuers by obstructing the road or by taking up favorable positions from which to force the enemy to deploy. In the latter case, care must be taken not to become so closely engaged as to render withdrawal unnecessarily difficult. The position taken should be selected with reference to ease of withdrawal and ability to bring the enemy under fire at long range.

655. What arms form a very important part of the rear guard?

In large commands, artillery and cavalry.

Flank Guards.

656. What is a flank guard, and how is it used?

A flank guard is a detachment detailed to cover the flank of a column marching past or across the front of an enemy. It may be placed in position to protect the passage, or it may be so marched as to cover the passage.

Digitized by Google

657. What is the object of a flank guard, and what should be its size?

The object of the flank guard is to hold the enemy in check long enough to enable the main body to pass, or, like the advance guard, to enable the main body to deploy. Like all other detachments, it should be no larger than is necessary, and should not be detailed, except when its protection is required.

658. What should be the distance between a flank guard and the main body, and what is one of the limits?

When a flank guard consists of a regiment or less, its distance from the main body should not exceed a mile and a half. Practicable communication must exist between it and the main body.

659. How is the flank guard marched?

As a separate command—that is, with advance or rear guards or both, as circumstances demand, and with patrolling on the exposed flank.

660. Does an advance guard send out a flank guard?

At times it may be necessary for an advance guard commande r to send out large reconnoitering parties, which temporarily assume the character and duties of a flank guard. Such parties should be given specific orders as to when and where they are to rejoin the column.

CAMPS.

Sanitation.

661. How should camps be formed?

If the area of the available ground is sufficient and suitable, the camp of the battalion or regiment should conform to the plates published in the Field Regulations. Under similar favorable conditions, the brigade may camp in column or in line of columns. In the latter formation the interval between regiments should be about fifty yards. When the camp-site has a restricted area, intervals and distances are reduced.

Note.—Under service conditions, camp-sites that will permit the encampment of regiments and brigades as above indicated will not often be available, and regularity must be sacrificed.

662. In large commands, what does the camp order contain relative to camp-sites?

Digitized by Google

It assigns camp-sites to the next smaller commands, and the commanders of the latter should locate their respective commands to the best advantage on the area assigned them.

THE SELECTION OF CAMP-SITES.

663. In campaign, what influences the selection of camp-sites?

Tactical necessity may leave little choice in the selection of camp-sites, but under any conditions the requirements of sanitation should be given every consideration consistent with the tactical situation.

664. What principles govern the selection of camp-sites?

Great care should be exercised in selecting sites. In general, the following principles govern:

First, the site should be convenient to an abundant supply of pure water. Second, good roads should lead to the camp. Interior communication throughout the camp should be easy. A camp near a main road is undesirable on account of dust and noise. Third, wood, grass, forage, and supplies should be at hand or easily obtainable. Fourth, the ground should accommodate the command without crowding and without compelling the troops of one unit to pass through the camp of another. Fifth, the site should be sufficiently high and rolling to drain off storm-water readily and, if the season be hot, to catch the breeze. In cold weather it should preferably have a southern exposure, with woods to the north to break the cold winds. In warm weather an eastern exposure, with the site moderately shaded with trees, is desirable. Sixth, the site should be dry; for this reason, porous soil, covered with stout turf and underlaid by a sandy or gravelly subsoil, is best. A site on clayey soil, or where the ground-water approaches the surface, is damp, cold, and unhealthful. Seventh, alluvial soils, marshy grounds, and ground near the base of hills, or near thick woods or dense vegetation, are undesirable as camp-sites on account of dampness. Ravines and depressions are likely to be unduly warm and to have insufficient or undesirable air-currents. Eighth, proximity to marshes or stagnant water is undesirable on account of the dampness, mosquitoes, and the diseases which the latter transmit. The high banks of lakes or large streams often make desirable camp-sites. Ninth, dry beds of streams should be avoided; they are subject to sudden freshets.

Digitized by Google

665. What is the danger of old camp-sites, and why should camp-sites be changed?

The occupation of old camp-sites is dangerous, since these are often permeated by elements of disease which persist for considerable periods. Camp-sites must be changed promptly when there is evidence of soil-pollution, of when epidemic disease threatens, but the need for frequent changes on this account may be a reflection on the sanitary administration of the camp. A change of camp-site is often desirable in order to secure a change of surroundings and to abandon areas which have become dusty and cut up.

Water Supply.

666. What should be done immediately upon making camp?

A guard should be placed over the water supply.

What arrangements should be made for using the water?

Places should be designated, if the water is obtained from a stream, for drawing water: first, for drinking and cooking; second, for watering animals; third, for bathing and washing clothes. The first named should be drawn farthest up the stream; the others, in the order named, down stream. If the stream be small, the water supply may be increased by building a dam. Small springs may be dug out and each lined with a gabion, or a barrel or box with both ends removed, or with stones, the space between the lining and the earth being filled with puddled clay. A rim of clay should be built to keep out surface drainage. The same method may be used near swamps, streams, or lakes to increase or clarify the water supply.

667. How should water be used that is not known to be pure?

It should be boiled twenty minutes; it should then be cooled and aerated by being poured repeatedly from one clean container to another, or it may be purified by approved apparatus supplied for the purpose.

669. What arrangements should be made for drawing the water?

The men should draw water from the authorized receptacles by means of a spigot or other similar arrangement. The dipping of water from the receptacles, or the use of a common drinking-cup, should be prohibited.

Digitized by Google

KITCHENS.

669. Describe an arrangement for the camp-kettles.

They can be hung on a support consisting of a green pole lying in the crotches of two upright posts of the same character. A narrow trench for the fire, about one foot deep, dug under the pole, not only protects the fire from the wind, but saves fuel. A still greater economy of fuel can be effected by digging a similar trench in the direction of the wind and slightly narrower than the diameter of the kettles. The kettles are then placed on the trench and the space between the kettles filled in with stone, clay, etc., leaving the flue running beneath the kettles. The draft can be improved by building a chimney of stones, clay, etc., at the leeward end of the flue. Four such trenches radiating from a common central chimney will give one flue for use, whatever may be the direction of the wind. A slight slope of the flue, from the chimney down, provides for drainage and improves the draft.

670. Describe several substitutes that may be constructed in the event of the lack of portable ovens.

Ovens may be constructed of stone and covered with earth to better retain the heat. If no stone is available, an empty barrel, with one head out, is laid on its side, covered with wet clay to a depth of six or more inches, and then with a layer of dry earth equally thick. A flue is constructed with the clay above the closed end of the barrel, which is then burned out with a hot fire. This leaves a baked clay covering for the oven. A recess can be similarly constructed with boards or even brushwood, supported on a horizontal pole resting on upright posts, covered and burnt out as in the case of the barrel. When clay banks are available, an oven may be excavated therein and used at once. To bake in such ovens, first heat them and then close flues and ends.

671. What care must be taken with the food, the cooking and mess utensils, and the kitchen?

Food must be protected from flies, dust, and sun. Facilities must be provided for cleaning and scalding the mess equipment of the men. Kitchens and the ground around them must be kept scrupulously clean.

672. What disposition should be made of the solid refuse?

It should be promptly burned, either in the kitchen fire or in an improvised crematory.

Digitized by Google

673. In temporary camps, what disposition may be made of liquid refuse?

It the soil is porous, it may be strained through gunny-sacking into seepage-pits dug near the kitchen. Flies must not have access to these pits. Boards or poles, covered with brush or grass and a layer of earth, may be used for this purpose. The strainers should also be protected from flies. Pits of this kind, dug in clayey soil, will not operate successfully. All pits should be filled with earth before marching.

DISPOSAL OF EXCRETA.

674. Immediately after the arrival in camp, what should be dug?

Sinks for the disposal of excreta.

Why is this of fundamental sanitary importance?

Because the most serious epidemics of camp diseases are spread from human excreta.

How many sinks are dug, and where are they located?

One sink is usually provided for each company and one for the officers of each battalion. Those for the men are invariably located on the side of the camp opposite the kitchens. All sinks should be so placed that they cannot pollute the water supply or camp-site as a result of drainage or overflow. To insure this, their location and their distance from the camp may be varied. When camp is made for a single night, shallow trenches 12 inches deep and 15 to 18 inches wide, which the men may straddle, will suffice. In more permanent camps, the trenches should be about 2 feet wide, 6 feet deep and 15 feet long. They should be provided with seats and back-rests made of poles, and should be screened with brush or old tent-flies.

675. In cold weather, how should the sinks be cared for?

The contents should be covered once daily with quicklime, ashes, or dry earth. When filled within two feet of the top, sinks should be discontinued and filled in.

What is the objection to open sinks?

They are dangerous during the fly season.

How may the danger be greatly reduced?

By covering the excreta with earth or by a thorough daily

Digitized by Google

burning of the entire area of the trench. Combustible sweepings or straw saturated with oil may be used for this purpose.

In fly season, what expedients may be used?

Trenches may be closed with seats, covered down to the ground with muslin, and supplied with self-closing lids. Urinal troughs, made of muslin and coated with oil or paint, should discharge into the trenches.

676. In permanent camps, what arrangements are made?

Special sanitary facilities for the disposal of excreta will ordinarily be provided. If necessary, urinal tubs may be placed in the company streets at night and removed at reveille. Their location should be plainly marked and thoroughly and frequently disinfected.

677. When troops bivouac for the night, what sanitary arrangements are made?

The necessity for extensive sanitary precautions is not great; however, shallow sink-trenches should be dug to prevent general pollution of the vicinity. If the cooking be collective, shallow kitchen sinks should be dug; if the cooking be individual, the men should be required to build their fires on the leeward flank of the camp or bivouac. Before marching, all trenches should be filled in.

PROTECTION OF CAMP OR BIVOUAC.

General Considerations.

678. What is the outpost and its object?

It is a covering detachment detailed to secure the camp or bivouac against surprise and to prevent an attack on it before the troops can prepare to resist.

679. What does the size and disposition of the outpost depend upon?

It will depend upon many circumstances, such as the size of the whole command, the proximity of the enemy, and the situation with respect to him, the nature of the terrain, etc.

What is a suitable strength for an outpost?

It may vary from a very small fraction to one-third of the whole orce. For a single company in bivouac, a few sentinels and patrols will suffice; for a large command, a more elaborate system

Digitized by Google

must be provided. It should be no stronger than is consistent with reasonable security.

How is the most economical protection furnished?

By keeping close contact with the enemy by means of outpost patrols, in conjunction with resisting detachments on the avenues of approach.

What should be the composition of the outpost?

It should be composed of complete organizations.

680. How is the outpost formed and relieved?

In a brigade or smaller force on the march toward the enemy, the outpost is generally formed from the advance guard, and is relieved the following day when the new advance guard crosses the line of the outguards. In a retreat, the detail for outpost duty is generally made from the main body. The new outpost becomes the rear guard the following day.

681. What is done in large forces?

The advance and rear guards perform such duties for several days, during which periods the outpost is furnished by the advance or rear guards.

What is done in small commands which are stationary for several days?

The outpost is relieved daily.

When will the outpost of large commands be relieved, as a rule?

At intervals of several days.

682. What preparation should the outpost make for defense?

The positions held by the subdivisions of the outpost should generally be prepared for defense, but conditions may render this unnecessary.

How do troops conduct themselves on outpost?

They keep concealed as much as is consistent with the proper performance of their duties; especially do they avoid appearing on the sky-line.

Do outpost troops render honors?

No.

Distribution of Outpost Troops.

683. How will the outpost generally be divided, and what are the parts called?

Digitized by Google

Into three parts, called, in order from the main body, the "reserve," the "line of supports," and the "line of outguards."

Upon what do the distances separating these parts and their distance from the main body depend?

Upon the objects sought, the nature of the terrain, and the size of the command. There can be no uniformity in the distance between supports and reserve, nor between outguards and supports, even in the same outpost. The avenues of approach and the important features of the terrain will largely control their exact positions.

How should outposts engage the enemy?

The outpost of a small force should ordinarily hold the enemy beyond effective rifle-range of the main body until the latter can deploy. For the same purpose, the outpost of a large force should hold the enemy beyond artillery reach.

684. What is the reserve, and how does it act?

The reserve constitutes the main body of the outpost, and is held at some central point from which it can readily support the troops in front, or hold a rallying position on which they may retire.

What should be the strength of the reserve?

The reserve may comprise one-fourth to two-thirds of the strength of the outpost, or it may be omitted when the outpost consists of less than two companies.

685. What is the function of the supports, and what their size?

The supports constitute a line of supporting and resisting detachments, varing in size from half a company to a battalion. They furnish the line of outguards.

How are the supports arranged and located?

They are numbered consecutively from right to left, and are placed at the more important points on the outpost line, usually in the line on which resistance is to be made in case of attack.

686. As a general rule, what influences the location of supports?

Roads exercise the greatest influence, and a support will generally be placed on or near a road.

How should the sector which it is to cover be defined?

By means of tangible lines on the ground—such that the support is centrally located therein.

687. What are outguards, their classification, and their arrangement?

Digitized by Google

They constitute the line of small detachments farthest to the front and nearest to the enemy. For convenience, they are classified as "pickets," "sentry squads," and "Cossack posts." They are numbered consecutively from right to left in each support.

688. Describe a picket, its functions, its location, and its strength.

A picket is a group consisting of two or more squads, ordinarily not exceeding half a company, posted in the line of outguards, to cover a given sector. It furnishes patrols and one or more sentinels, double sentinels, sentry squads, or Cossack posts for observation. They are placed at the more important points in the line of outguards, such as road-forks. The strength of each depends upon the number of small groups required to observe properly its sector.

689. What is a sentry squad, and what its function?

It is a squad posted in observation at an indicated point. It posts a double sentinel in observation, the remaining men resting near by and furnishing the reliefs of sentinels. In some cases it may be required to furnish a patrol.

690. What is a Cossack post, and what its function?

It consists of four men. It is an observation group, similar to a sentry squad, but employs a single sentinel.

691. What may be advisable at night, and what preparation should be made?

At night it will sometimes be advisable to place some of the outguards or their sentinels in a position different from that which they occupy in the daytime. In such case the ground should be carefully studied before dark, and the change made at dusk. However, a change in the position of the outguard will be exceptional.

692. What are sentinels, and how are they used?

Sentinels are generally used singly in the daytime, but at night double sentinels will be required in most cases. Sentinels furnished by Cossack posts or sentry squads are kept near their group. Those furnished by pickets may be as far as one hundred yards away. Every sentinel should be able to communicate readily with the body to which he belongs.

693. How are sentinel posts numbered?

Consecutively from right to left in each outguard. For this purpose sentry squads and Cossack posts furnished by pickets are counted as sentinel posts.

Digitized by Google

694. What may be substituted for the use of outguards along the entire front of observation?

Part of this front may be covered by patrols only. These should be used to cover such sections of the front as can be crossed by the enemy only with difficulty, and over which he is not likely to attempt a crossing after dark.

What conditions affect local patrolling?

In daylight much of the local patrolling may be dispensed with, if the country can be seen from the posts of the sentinels. However, patrols should frequently be pushed well to the front, unless the ground in that direction is exceptionally open.

695. What is the object of the outpost system?

That patrols or sentinels must be the first troops which the enemy meets, and each body in rear must have time to prepare for the blow. These bodies cause as much delay as possible without sacrificing themselves, and gradually retire to the line where the outpost is to make its resistance.

696. Why must patrols be used?

To keep up connection between the parts of the outpost except when, during daylight, certain fractions or groups are mutually visible.

How is this connection maintained after dark?

By patrols throughout the outpost, except where the larger subdivisions are provided with wire communication.

697. What covering detachments may the outpost commander detail from the reserve in addition to the ordinary outguards?

One or more detached posts to cover roads or areas not in the general line assigned to the supports.

What other detached posts may be sent out?

The commander of the whole force may, in like manner, order detached posts sent from the main body to cover important roads or localities not included in the outpost line.

What is the rule as to the number and strength of detached posts?

They are reduced to the absolute needs of the situation.

ESTABLISHING THE OUTPOST.

698. In what manner is the outpost established, and how is temporary protection afforded in the meantime?

Digitized by Google

The outpost is posted as quickly as possible, so that the troops can the sooner obtain rest. Until the leading outpost troops are able to assume their duties, temporary protection, known as the "march outpost," is furnished by the nearest available troops.

699. What does the halt order of the commander contain relating to the outpost?

It details the troops to constitute the outpost, assigns a commander therefor, designates the general line to be occupied, and, when practicable, points out the position to be held in case of attack.

700. What does the outpost commander do upon the receipt of this order?

He should issue the outpost order with the least practicable delay.

How may it be necessary to give the order, and how is it usually done?

In large commands, from the map; but usually the outpost commander will have to make some preliminary reconnaissance, unless he has an accurate and detailed map.

What does the order contain?

It gives such available information of the situation as is necessary to the complete and proper guidance of subordinates; designates the troops to constitute the supports; assigns their location and the sector each is to cover; provides for the necessary detached posts; indicates any special reconnaissance that is to be made; orders the location and disposition of the reserve; disposes of the train if same is ordered to join the outpost; and informs subordinates where information will be sent.

701. In general, what is the best method for the outpost commander to give his orders?

Generally, it is preferable to give verbal orders to his support commanders from some locality which overlooks the terrain. The time and locality should be so selected that the support commanders may join their commands and conduct them to their positions without causing unnecessary delay to their troops. The reserve commander should, if possible, receive his orders at the same time as the support commanders. Subordinates to whom he gives orders separately should be informed of the location of other parts of the outpost. In large outposts written orders are frequently most convenient. After issuing the initial orders, the outpost com-

Digitized by Google

mander inspects the outpost, orders the necessary changes or additions, and sends his superior a report of his dispositions.

702. How is the reserve located and disposed?

It is marched to its post by its commander, who then sends out such detachments as have been ordered and places the rest in camp or bivouac, over which at least one sentinel should be posted. Connection must be maintained with the main body, the supports, and near-by detached posts.

703. How do supports march to their posts?

They use the necessary covering detachments when in advance of the march outposts.

What should the support commander's order contain?

It should fully explain the situation to subordinates or to the entire command, if it be small. It should detail the troops for the different outguards, and, when necessary, define the sector each is to cover. It should provide the necessary sentinels at the post of the support, the patrols to be sent therefrom, and should arrange for the necessary intrenching. Connection should be maintained with adjoining supports and with the outguards furnished by the support.

704. What general principles govern the disposition of support?

The support commander in posting his command must seek to cover his sector in such manner that the enemy cannot reach, in dangerous numbers and unobserved, the position of the support or pass by it within the sector intrusted to the support. On the other hand, he must economize men on observation and patrol duty, for these duties are unusually fatiguing. He must practice the greatest economy of men consistent with the requirements of practical security.

705. As soon as the posting of the support is completed, what should its commander do?

He should carefully inspect the dispositions and correct defects, if any, and report the disposition of his support, including the patrolling ordered, to the outpost commander. This report is preferably made by means of a sketch?

706. Describe the method of establishing an outguard?

Each outguard is marched by its commander to its assigned station, and, especiaally in the case of a picket, is covered by the necessary patrolling to prevent surprise. Having reached the position, the commander explains the situation to his men. and estab-

Digitized by Google

lishes reliefs for each sentinel, and, if possible, for each patrol to be furnished. Besides the sentinels and patrols, a picket must have a sentinel at its post. The commander then posts the sentinels and points out to them the principal features, such as towns, roads, and streams, and gives their names. He gives the direction and location of the enemy, if known, and of adjoining parts of the outpost. He gives to patrols the same information and the necessary orders as to their routes and the frequency with which the same shall be covered. Each patrol should go over its route once before dark.

707. What connection should every picket maintain, and how?

Connection with outguards on its right and left, by means of patrols.

What precaution will each commander take?

He will conceal his outguard and generally strengthen his position by intrenching.

Digitized by Google

PART IV.

Ceremonies and Inspections.

CEREMONIES.

GENERAL RULES FOR CEREMONIES.

708. How is it determined in what order troops of the various arms are arranged for ceremonies?

It is prescribed by Army Regulations.

What is the order of formation for ceremonies in a regiment?

The companies of the battalion and the battalions of the regiment are posted from right to left in line and from head to rear in column, in the order of rank of their respective commanders present at the formation, the senior on the right or at the head.

In which direction do commanders face?

The commander faces the command; subordinate commanders face to the front.

709. At the command PRESENT ARMS, given by the colonel, what does the lieutenant-colonel and the colonel's staff do?

They salute.

When does the major's staff salute?

At the major's command.

When does each staff return to the carry or order?

When the command **Order arms** is given by its chief.

710. What is done at the assembly or the ceremony?

Companies are formed on their own parades and informally inspected.

What is done at the first and at the second sounding of adjutant's call?

Digitized by Google

At the first sounding, except for ceremonies involving a single battalion, each battalion is formed on its own parade, reports are received, and the battalion presented to the major. At the second sounding the regiment is formed.

REVIEWS.

General Rules.

711. How does the adjutant mark the points where the column changes direction?

He posts men or otherwise marks the points in such manner that its flank in passing will be about twelve paces from the reviewing officers.

Where is the post of the reviewing officer, and how is it indicated?

It is usually opposite the center of the line, and is indicated by a marker.

How is the staff of the reviewing officer and others who accompany him arranged?

Officers of the same or higher grade and distinguished personages invited to accompany the reviewing officer, place themselves on his left; their staffs and orderlies place themselves, respectively, on the left of the staff and orderlies of the reviewing officer; all others who accompany the reviewing officer place themselves on the left of his staff, their orderlies in rear. A staff officer is designated to escort distinguished personages and to indicate to them their proper positions.

712. Describe the manner in which the reviewing officer rides around the troops, and how the commanding officer of the troops and his staff officers accompany him.

While riding around the troops, the reviewing officer may direct his staff, flag, and orderlies to remain at the post of the reviewing officer, or that only his personal staff and flag shall accompany him; in either case the commanding officer alone accompanies the reviewing officer. If the reviewing officer is accompanied by his entire staff, the staff officers of the commander place themselves on the right of the staff of the reviewing officer.

What honors are paid the color?

The reviewing officer and others at the reviewing-stand salute

Digitized by Google

the color as it passes. When passing around the troops, the reviewing officer and those accompanying the reviewing officer salute the color when passing in front of it.

What salutes are acknowledged, and by whom?

The reviewing officer returns the salute of the commanding officer of the troops only. Those who accompany him do not salute.

713. In passing in review, what salutes are rendered, and how?

Each staff salutes with its commander.

714. After saluting the reviewing officer, what does the commanding officer of the troops and his staff do?

He turns out of the column and takes his post on the right of the reviewing officer, his staff on the right of the reviewing officer's staff. When the rear element of his command has passed, without changing his position, he salutes the reviewing officer, and then rejoins his command. The commanding officer of the troops and his staff are the only ones who turn out of the column.

715. If the person reviewing the command is not mounted, how do the commanding officer and his staff conduct themselves?

The commanding officer and his staff, on turning out of the column after passing the reviewing officer, dismount, preparatory to taking post. In such case, the salute of the commanding officer, prior to rejoining his command, is made with the hand before remounting.

716. Does the regimental color salute?

When the rank of the reviewing officer entitles him to the honor, each regimental color salutes at the command **Present arms,** given or repeated by the major of the battalion with which it is posted, and again in passing in review.

717. When do the bands play, and how are they marched?

The band of an organization plays while the reviewing officer is passing in front of and in rear of the organization. Each band, immediately after passing the reviewing officer, turns out of the column, takes post in front of and facing him, continues to play until its regiment has passed, then ceases playing, and follows in rear of its regiment; the band of the following regiment commences to play as soon as the preceding band has ceased. While marching in review, but one band in each brigade plays at a time, and but one

Digitized by Google

band at a time when within one hundred paces of the reviewing officer.

718. What honors are paid by the band and musicians?

If the rank of the reviewing officer entitles him to the honor, the band plays the prescribed **national air**, or the field music sounds tc **the color, march, flourishes,** or **ruffles**, when arms are presented. When passing in review at the moment the regimental color salutes, the musicians halted in front of the reviewing officer sound to the color, march, flourishes, or ruffles.

719. Is the formation for review absolute?

No; it may be modified to suit the ground, and the **present arms** and the ride around the line by the reviewing officer may be dispensed with.

720. If the post of the reviewing officer is on the left of the column, how do the troops march in review?

With the guide left; the commanding officer and his staff turn out of column to the left, taking post as prescribed above, but to the left of the reviewing officer. In saluting, the captain gives the command: **1. Eyes, 2. LEFT.**

721. What is the cadence of the march in review?

Except in the review of a single battalion, the troops pass in review in quick time only.

722. In reviews of brigades or larger commands, what should each battalion do after the rear has passed the reviewing officer fifty paces?

It should take the double time for one hundred yards, in order not to interfere with the march of the column in rear; if necessary, it then turns out of the column and returns to camp by the most practicable route. The leading battalion of each regiment is followed by the other units of the regiment.

723. In a brigade or larger review, what may be done by regiments to rest the men?

A regimental commander may cause his regiment to stand at ease, rest, or stack arms, and fall out and resume attention, so as not to interfere with the ceremony.

724. When an organization is to be reviewed before an inspector junior in rank to the commanding officer, who receives the review?

The commanding officer, accompanied by the inspector, who takes post on his left.

Digitized by Google

Battalion Review.

725. Describe the ceremony of battalion review.

The battalion having been formed in line, the major faces to the front; the reviewing officer moves a few paces toward the major and halts; the major turns about and commands: **1. Present, 2. ARMS,** and again turns about and salutes. The reviewing officer returns the salute; the major turns about, brings the battalion to order arms, and again turns to the front. The reviewing officer approaches to about six paces from the major, the latter salutes, takes post on his right, and accompanies him around the battalion. The band plays. The reviewing officer proceeds to the right of the band, passes in front of the captains to the left of the line, and returns to the right, passing in rear of the file-closers and the band. On arriving at the right of the line, the major salutes, halts, and when the reviewing officer and staff have passed, moves directly to his post in front of the battalion, faces it, and commands: **1. Pass in review, 2. Squads right, 3. MARCH.** At the first command, the band changes direction, if necessary, and halts; at the third command, given when the band has changed direction, the battalion moves off, the band playing; without command from the major, the column changes direction at the points indicated, and column of companies at full distance is formed sussessively to the left at the second change of direction; the major takes his post thirty paces in front of the band immediately after the second change; the band, having passed the reviewing officer, turns to the left out of the column, takes post in front of and facing the reviewing officer, and remains there until the review terminates. The major and Staff salute, turn the head as in **eyes right,** and look toward the reviewing officer when the major is six paces from him; they return to the **carry** and turn the head and eyes to the front when the major has passed six paces beyond him. Without facing about, each captain or special unit commander, except the drum-major, commands **1. Eyes** in time to add **2. Right** when at six paces from the reviewing-officer, and commands **Front** when at six paces beyond him. At the command **Eyes,** the company officers and non-commissioned officers armed with the saber execute the first motion of **present saber;** at the command **Right,** all turn head and eyes to the right, and the company officers complete **present saber;** at the command **Front,** all turn head and eyes to the front and resume the **carry saber.**

Digitized by Google

How do non-commissioned staff officers, non-commissioned staff officers in command of subdivisions, and the drum-major conduct themselves?

They salute, turn the head and eyes, return to the front, resume the carry or drop the hand, at the point prescribed for the major.

How do officers and dismounted non-commissioned officers in command of subdivisions with arms in hand salute?

They render the rifle or saber salute.

Do the guides execute EYES RIGHT?

Those charged with the step, trace, and direction do not execute **eyes right.**

Does the regimental color salute?

If the reviewing officer is entitled to a salute from the color, it salutes when at six paces from him, and is raised when at six paces beyond him?

After having saluted, what does the major do?

Takes post on the right of the reviewing officer, remains there until the rear of the battalion has passed, then salutes, and rejoins his battalion.

When does the band cease playing?

When the column has completed its second change of direction after passing the reviewing officer.

726. When the battalion arrives at its original position in column, what command does the major give, how is it executed, and how does the review terminate?

1. Double time, 2. MARCH. The band plays in double time. The battalion passes in review as before, except that in double time the command **Eyes right** is omitted, and there is no saluting except by the major, when he leaves the reviewing officer. The review terminates when the rear company has passed the reviewing officer; the band then ceases to play, and, unless otherwise directed by the major, returns to the position it occupied before marching in review, or is dismissed; the major rejoins the battalion and brings it to quick time. The battalion then executes such movements as the reviewing officer may have directed, or is marched to its parade-ground and dismissed. Marching past in double time may, in the discretion of the reviewing officer, be omitted. The review terminates when the major rejoins his battalion.

Digitized by Google

727. At battalion review, may the major and his staff be dismounted?

Yes; in the discretion of the commanding officer.

Regimental Review.

728. How is the regiment formed for regimental review, and how does it proceed?

It is formed in line or in line of masses. In line, the review proceeds as in the battalion, substituting "colonel" for "major," and "regiment" for "battalion."

How does the regiment execute the march in review?

The colonel commands: **PASS IN REVIEW.** The band changes direction, if necessary, and halts. Each major then commands: **1. Squads right, 2. MARCH.** The band marches at the command of the major of the leading battalion. At the second change of direction each major takes post twenty paces in front of his leading company. The rear of the column having passed the reviewing officer, the battalions, unless otherwise directed, are marched to their parades and dismissed. In line of masses, when the reviewing officer has passed around the regiment, the colonel commands: **PASS IN REVIEW.** The band changes direction, if necessary, and halts. The major of the right battalion, then commands: **1. Column of squads, first company, squads right, 2. MARCH.** At the third command, the band and the leading company of the right battalion move off. Each company and battalion in rear moves off in time to follow at its proper distance.

729. How is the review of a small body of troops composed of different arms conducted?

On the principles laid down for the regiment. The troops of each arm are formed and marched according to the drill regulations for that arm.

Review of Large Commands.

730. In a command consisting of one regiment or less and detachments of other arms, how are the troops formed for review, and what principles govern?

They are formed as ordered by the commanding officer. The principles of regimental review will be observed whenever practicable.

Digitized by Google

731. In the review of a brigade or a larger command, what is omitted?

The present arms and the ride around the line by the reviewing officer.

How do the troops form and march?

In the order prescribed by the commanding officer.

PARADES.

General Rule.

732. If dismounted, how does the officer receiving the parade and his staff stand while the band is sounding off, and what do they do if mounted?

They stand at **parade rest** with arms folded; they resume **attention** with the adjutant. If mounted, they remain at **attention.**

733. What is done at the command REPORT, given by a battalion adjutant?

The captains, in succession from the right, salute and report: "A (or other company) company present or accounted for," or, "A (or other) company, (so many) officers or enlisted men absent; and resume the **order saber.**

What is done at the same command given by the regimental adjutant?

The majors similarly report their battalions.

Battalion Parades.

734. At battalion parade, what is done at adjutant's call?

The battalion is formed in line, but not presented.

When do the lieutenants take their posts in front of the center of their respective platoons?

At the captain's command for dressing his company on the line.

Where does the major take post?

At a convenient distance in front of the center and facing the battalion.

From his post in front of the center of the battalion, what does the adjutant command, and how is it executed?

Digitized by Google

After commanding, **1. Guides, 2. POSTS,** he adds: **1. Parade, 2. REST;** the battalion executes **parade rest.** The adjutant directs the band: **Sound off;** the band, playing in quick time, passes in front of the line of officers to the left of the line and back to its post on the right, when it ceases playing. At evening parade, when the band ceases playing, **retreat** is sounded by the field music, and, following the last note, and while the flag is being lowered, the band plays "The Star-Spangled Banner."

Just before the last note of "retreat," what does the adjutant command, and how is it executed?

He comes to **attention,** and, as the last note of **retreat** ends, commands: **1. Battalion, 2. ATTENTION.** When the band ceases playing, he commands: **1. Present, 2. ARMS.** He then turns about and reports: "Sir, the parade is formed."

What does the major then do?

He directs the adjutant: "Take your post, sir." The adjutant moves at a trot (if dismounted, in quick time), passes by the major's right, and takes his post.

What does the major do then?

He draws saber and commands: **1. Order, 2. ARMS,** and adds such exercises in the manual of arms as he may desire. Officers, non-commissioned officers commanding companies or armed with the saber, and the color guard, having once executed **order arms,** remain in that position during the exercises in the manual.

What does the major then direct, and how is it executed?

He directs the adjutant: "Receive the reports, sir." The adjutant, passing by the major's right, advances at a trot (if dismounted, in quick time) toward the center of the line, halts midway between it and the major, and commands: **REPORT.** The reports received, the adjutant turns about, and reports: "Sir, all are present or accounted for," or "Sir, (so many) officers or enlisted men are absent," including in the list of absentees those from the band and field music reported to him by the drum-major prior to the parade.

What does the major then direct, and how is it executed?

"Publish the orders, sir." The adjutant turns about and commands: **Attention to orders.** He then reads the orders, and commands: **1. Officers, 2. Center, 3. MARCH.** At the command **Center,** the company officers carry saber and face to the center. At

Digitized by Google

the command **March**, they close to the center and face to the front; the adjutant turns about and takes his post. The officers having closed and faced to the front, the senior commands: **1. Forward, 2. MARCH.** The officers advance, the band playing; the left officer of the center or right center company is the guide, and marches on the major; the officers are halted at six paces from the major by the senior, who commands: **1. Officers, 2. HALT.** They halt and salute, returning to the carry saber with the major.

What does the major then do and command, and how are his commands executed?

He gives such instructions as he deems necessary, and commands: **1. Officers, 2. POSTS, 3. MARCH.** At the command **Posts**, company officers face about; at the command **March**, they step off with the guide as before, and the senior commands: **1. Officers, 2. HALT**, so as to halt three paces from the line; he then adds: **1. POSTS, 2. MARCH.** At the command **Posts**, officers face outward, and at the command **March**, step off in succession at four paces distant, resume their posts and order saber; the lieutenants march directly to their posts in rear of their companies. The music ceases when all officers have resumed their posts.

What does the major then command, and how is it executed?

1. Pass in review, 2. Squads right, 3. MARCH, and return saber. The battalion marches according to the principles of review; when the last company has passed, the ceremony is concluded. The band continues to play while the companies are in march upon the parade-ground. Companies are formed in column of squads, without halting, and are marched to their respective parades by their captains.

When the company officers have saluted the major, what may he direct them to do, and how is the parade concluded?

To form line with the staff, in which case they individually move to the front, passing to the right and left of the major and staff, halt on the line established by the staff, face about, and stand at attention. The music ceases when the officers join the staff. The major causes the companies to pass in review under the command of their first sergeants by the same commands as before. The company officers return saber with the major, and remain at attention.

Digitized by Google

REGIMENTAL PARADES.

735. How is the regiment formed for, and how does it proceed in regimental parade?

It is formed in line or line of masses; the formation having proceeded up to, but not including the present, the parade proceeds as described for the battalion, with the following exceptions: "colonel" is substituted for "major," "regiment" for "battalion," in the description, and "battalions" for "battalion" in the commands. Lieutenants remain in the line of file-closers. After publishing the orders, the adjutant commands: **1. Officers, center, 2. MARCH.** The company commanders remain at their posts with their companies. The field and staff officers form one line, closing on the center. The senior commands: **1. Forward, 2. MARCH.** The second major is the guide, and marches on the colonel. After being dismissed by the colonel, each major moves individually to the front, turns outward, and, followed by his staff, resumes his post by the most direct line. The colonel directs the lieutenant-colonel to march the regiment in review; the latter moves to a point midway between the colonel and the regiment, and marches the regiment in review, as prescribed. If the lieutenant-colonel is not present, the colonel gives the necessary commands for marching the regiment in review.

ESCORTS.

ESCORT OF THE COLOR.

736. In the ceremony of the escort of the color, the regiment being in line, what does the colonel do?

He details a company, other than the color company, to receive and escort the national color to its place in line. During the ceremony the regimental color remains with the color guard at the post with the regiment.

How does the band march?

It moves straight to its front until clear of the line of field officers, changes direction to the right, and is halted.

How does the designated company march?

It forms column of platoons in rear of the band, the color-bearer or bearers between the platoons

Describe the continuation of the ceremony from this point.

The escort then marches without music to the colonel's office or quarters and is formed in line facing the entrance, the band on

Digitized by Google

the right, the color-bearer in the line of file-closers. The color-bearer, preceded by the first lieutenant and followed by a sergeant of the escort, then goes to obtain the color. When the color-bearer comes out, followed by the lieutenant and the sergeant, he halts before the entrance, facing the escort; the lieutenant places himself on the right, the sergeant on the left of the color-bearer; the escort presents arms, and the field music sounds **to the color**; the first lieutenant and sergeant salute. Arms are brought to the order; the lieutenant and sergeant return to their posts; the company is formed in company of platoons, the band taking post in front of the column, the color-bearer between the platoons; the escort marches in quick time, with guide left, back to the regiment, the band playing; the march is so conducted that when the escort arrives at fifty paces in front of the right of the regiment, the direction of the march shall be parallel to its front. When the color arrives opposite its place in line, the escort is formed in line to the left; the color-bearer, passing between the platoons, advances and halts twelve paces in front of the colonel; the color-bearer having halted, the colonel, who has taken post thirty paces in front of the center of his regiment, faces about, commands **1. Present arms, 2. ARMS,** resumes his front, and salutes; the field music sounds **to the color,** and the regimental color-bearer executes the **color salute** at the command **Present arms.** The colonel then faces about, and brings the regiment to the **order,** at which the color-bearer takes his post with the color company. The escort presents arms and comes to the **order** with the regiment at the command of the colonel, after which the captain forms it again in column of platoons, and, preceded by the band, marches it to its place in line, passing around the left flank of the regiment. The band plays until the escort passes the left of the line, when it ceases playing and returns to its post on the right, passing in rear of the regiment. The regiment may be brought to a rest when the escort passes the left of the line.

737. How does the battalion execute the escort of the color?

According to the same principle.

Escort of Honor.

738. What is the purpose of escorts of honor, and how are they selected?

They are detailed for the purpose of receiving and escorting personages of high rank, civil or military. The troops for this pur-

Digitized by Google

pose are selected for their soldierly appearance and superior discipline.

How does the escort form, and how is it conducted?

It forms in line opposite the place where the personage presents himself, the band on the flank of the escort toward which it will march. On the appearance of the personage, he is received with the honors due to his rank. The escort is formed into column of companies, platoons, or squads, and takes up the march, the personage and his staff or retinue taking positions in rear of the column; when he leaves the escort, line is formed and the same honors are paid as before.

When the position of the escort is at a considerable distance from the point where the personage is to be received—as, for instance, where a courtyard or wharf intervenes—what disposition may be made?

A double line of sentinels is posted from that point to the escort, facing inward; the sentinels successively salute as he passes, and are then relieved and join the escort.

Who is detailed to attend the personage?

An officer is appointed to attend him and bear such communication as he may have to make to the commander of the escort.

Funeral Escort.

739. What is the composition and strength of the funeral escort?

It is prescribed in Army Regulations.

How is the escort formed and the ceremony conducted?

The escort is formed opposite the quarters of the deceased; the band on that flank of the escort toward which it is to march. Upon the appearance of the coffin, the commander commands: **1. Present, 2. ARMS,** and the band plays an appropriate air; arms are then brought to the order. The escort is next formed into column of companies, platoons, or squads. If the escort be small, it may be marched in line. The procession is formed in the following order: 1. Music, 2. Escort, 3. Clergy, 4. Coffin and pall-bearers, 5. Mourners, 6. Members of the family of the deceased, 7. Other officers and enlisted men, 8. Distinguished persons, 9. Delegations, 10. Societies, 11. Civilians, officers and enlisted men (Nos. 6 and 7), with side arms, are in the order of rank, seniors in front. The procession

Digitized by Google

being formed, the commander of the escort puts it in march. The escort marches slowly to solemn music. The column having arrived opposite the grave, line is formed facing it. The coffin is then carried along the front of the escort to the grave; arms are presented; the music plays an appropriate air; the coffin having been placed over the grave, the music ceases and arms are brought to the order. The commander next commands: **1. Parade, 2. REST.** The escort executes **parade rest**, officers and men inclining the head. When the funeral services are completed and the coffin lowered into the grave, the commander causes the escort to resume **attention** and fire three rounds of blank cartridges, the muzzles of the pieces being elevated. When the escort is greater than a battalion, one battalion is designated to fire the volleys. A musician then sounds **taps**. The escort is then formed into column, marched in quick time to the point where it was assembled, and dismissed.

Upon the return from the grave, when does the band play?

Not until it has left the enclosure.

When the distance to the place of interment is considerable, how may the escort march?

After having left the camp or garrison, it may march at ease in quick time until it approaches the burial-ground, when it is brought to attention.

During the march, when does music play?

In marching at attention, the field music may alternate with the band in playing; while marching at ease, the music does not play.

740. What honors are paid by bands or field music at funerals?

When arms are presented at the funeral of a person entitled to any of the following honors, the band plays the prescribed **national air**, or the field music sounds **to the color, march, flourishes, or ruffles**, according to the rank of the deceased, after which the band plays an appropriate air. The commander of the escort, in forming column, gives the appropriate commands for the different arms.

741. What is done at the funeral of a mounted officer or enlisted man?

His horse, in mourning caparison, follows the hearse.

742. Should the entrance of the cemetery prevent the hearse accompanying the escort till the latter halts at the grave, what modification is made?

Digitized by Google

The column is halted at the entrance long enough to take the coffin from the hearse, when the column is again put in march.

What do the cavalry and artillery do when unable to enter the enclosure?

They turn out of the column, face the column, and salute the remains as they pass.

743. When necessary to escort the remains from the quarters of the deceased to the church before the funeral service, arms are presented upon receiving the remains at the quarters and also as they are borne into the church.

744. What arrangements are made by the commander of the escort previous to the funeral?

He gives the clergymen and pall-bearers all needed directions.

INSPECTIONS

Company Inspection.

745. Being in line at a halt, what are the commands for company inspection, and how executed?

1. Open ranks, 2. MARCH. At the command **March,** the front rank executes **right dress**; the rear rank and file-closers march backward four steps, halt, and execute **right dress**; the lieutenants pass around their respective flanks and take post, facing to the front, three paces in front of the center of their respective platoons. The captain aligns the front rank, rear rank, and file-closers, takes post three paces in front of the right guide, facing to the left, and commands: **1. FRONT, 2. PREPARE FOR INSPECTION.** At the second command, the lieutenants carry saber; the captain returns saber and inspects them, after which they face about, order saber, and stand at ease; upon completion of the inspection, they carry saber, face about, and order saber. The captain may direct the lieutenants to accompany or assist him, in which case they return saber and, at the close of the inspection, resume their posts in front of the company, draw and carry saber. Having inspected the lieutenants, the captain proceeds to the right of the company. Each man, as the captain approaches him, executes **inspection arms.** The captain takes the piece, grasping it with his right hand just above the rear sight, the man dropping his hands. The captain inspects the piece, and, with the hand and the piece in the same posi-

Digitized by Google

tion as in receiving it, hands it back to the man, who takes it with the left hand at the balance, and executes **order arms.** As the captain returns the piece, the next man executes **inspection arms,** and so on through the company. Should the piece be inspected without handling, each man executes **order arms** as soon as the captain passes to the next man. The inspection is from right to left in front and from left to right in rear of each rank and of the line of file-closers. When approached by the captain, the first sergeant executes **inspection saber.** Enlisted men armed with the pistol execute **inspection pistol** by drawing the pistol from the holster and holding it diagonally across the body, barrel up, and six inches in front of the neck, muzzle pointing up and to the left. The pistol is returned to the holster as soon as the captain passes.

Upon completion of the inspection, what does the captain do and command, and how is it executed?

The captain takes post facing to the left in front of the right guide and on line with the lieutenants, and commands: **1. Close ranks, 2. MARCH.** At the command **March,** the lieutenants resume their post in line; the rear rank closes to forty inches, each man covering his file leader; the file-closers close to two paces from the rear rank.

746. If the company is dismissed, how is the inspection continued?

The rifles are put away. In quarters, head-dress and accouterments are removed, and the men stand near their respective bunks; in camp, they stand covered, but without accouterments, in front of their tents. The captain, accompanied by the lieutenants, then inspects the quarters or camp. The first sergeant precedes the captain and calls the men to **attention** on entering each squad-room or on approaching the tents; the men stand at **attention,** but do not salute.

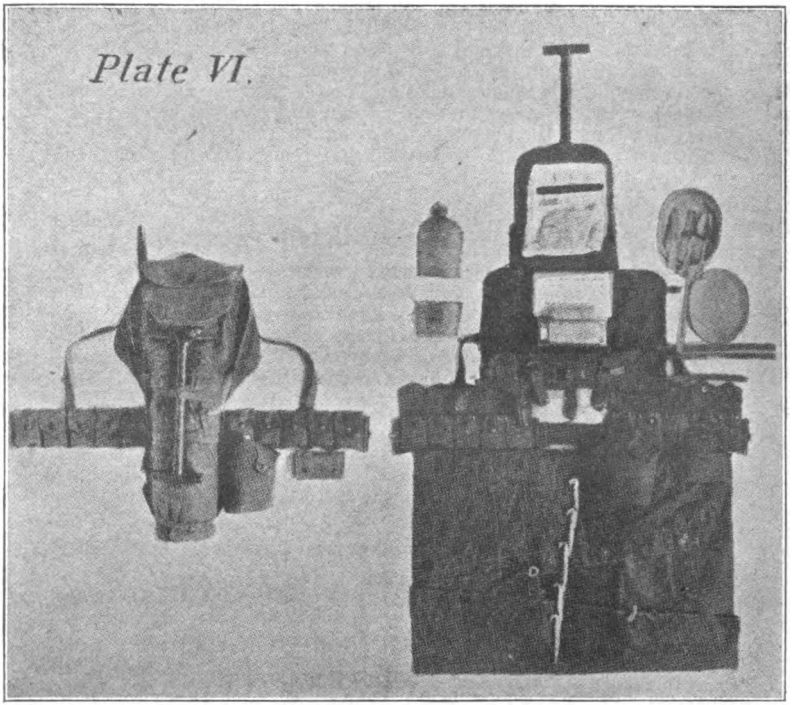
747. If the inspection is to include an examination of the equipment, how does the captain proceed after closing ranks?

He causes the company to stack arms, to march backward to four paces in rear of the stacks, and to take intervals. He then commands: **1. UNSLING EQUIPMENT, 2. OPEN PACKS.**

How is this command executed?

At the first command, each man unslings his equipment and places it on the ground at his feet, haversack to the front, end of the

Digitized by Google



Digitized by Google

pack one foot in front of toes. At the second command, pack carriers are unstrapped, packs removed and unrolled, the longer edges of the pack along the lower edge of the cartridge belt. Each man exposes shelter-tent pins; removes meat-can, knife, fork, and spoon from the meat-can pouch, and places them on the right of the haversack, knife, fork, and spoon in the opened meat-can; removes the canteen and cup from the cover and places them on the left side of the haversack; unstraps and spreads out haversack so as to expose its contents; folds up the carrier to uncover the cartridge pouches; opens same; unrolls toilet articles and places them on the outer flap of the haversack; opens first-aid pouch and exposes contents to view. Each man then resumes the **attention.** (Plate VI.) When the rations are not carried in the haversack, the inspections proceeds as described, except that the toilet articles and bacon and condiment cans are displayed on the unrolled packs. The captain then passes along the ranks and file-closers as before, inspects the equipments, returns to the right, and commands: **CLOSE PACKS.**

How is this command executed?

Each man rolls up his toilet articles, straps up his haversack and its contents, replaces the meat-can, knife, fork, and spoon, and the canteen and cup; closes cartridge pockets and first-aid pouch, rolls up and replaces pack in carrier, and, leaving the equipment in its position on the ground, resumes the position of **attention.** All equipments being packed, the captain then commands: **SLING EQUIPMENT.**

How is this command executed, and what does the captain do?

The equipments are slung and belts fastened. The captain then causes the company to assemble and take arms. The inspection is completed, as already explained.

748. Should the inspector be other than the captain, how is the inspection conducted?

The captain, after commanding **FRONT** adds **REST,** and faces to the front. When the inspector approaches, the captain faces to the left, brings the company to **attention,** faces to the front, and salutes. The salute acknowledged, the captain carries saber, faces to the left, commands: **PREPARE FOR INSPECTION,** and again faces to the front. The inspection proceeds as before; the captain returns saber and accompanies the inspector as soon as the latter passes him.

Digitized by Google

BATTALION INSPECTION.

749. If there be both inspection and review, in what order are they held?

The inspection may either precede or follow the review.

The battalion being in column of companies at full distance, all officers dismounted, what does the major command, how is it executed, and how is the inspection conducted?

The major commands: **1. Prepare for inspection, 2. MARCH.** At the first command, each captain commands: **Open ranks**. At the command **March,** the ranks are opened in each company, as in the inspection of the company. The field musicians join their companies. The drum major conducts the band to a position thirty paces in rear of the column, if not already there, and opens ranks. The major takes post facing to the front and twenty paces in front of the center of the leading company. The staff takes post as if mounted. The color takes post five paces in rear of the staff. Field and staff officers senior in rank to the inspector do not take post in front of the column, but accompany him. The inspector inspects the major and, accompanied by the latter, inspects the staff officers. The major then commands: **REST,** returns saber, and, with his staff, accompanies the inspector. If the major is the inspector, he commands: **REST,** and inspects his staff, which then accompanies him. The inspector, commencing at the head of the column, then makes a minute inspection of the color guard, the non-commissioned staff, and the arms, accouterments, dress, and ammunition of each soldier of the several companies in succession, and inspects the band. The adjutant gives the necessary commands for the inspection of the color guard, non-commissioned staff, and band. The color guard and non-commissioned staff may be dismissed as soon as inspected.

750. As the inspector approaches each company, what does its captain command, and how is it executed?

The captain commands: **1. Company, 2 ATTENTION, 3. PREPARE FOR INSPECTION,** and faces to the front; as soon as inspected, he returns saber and accompanies the inspector. The inspection proceeds as in company inspection. At its completion, the captain closes ranks and commands: **REST.** Unless otherwise directed by the inspector, the major directs that the company be marched to its parade and dismissed.

Digitized by Google

751. If the inspection will probably last a long time, what may the companies in rear be permitted to do?

They may be permitted to stack arms and fall out; before the inspector approaches, they fall in and take arms.

752. When does the band play, and how is it inspected?

It plays during the inspection of the companies. When the inspector approaches the band, the adjutant commands: **PREPARE FOR INSPECTION.** As the inspector approaches him, each man raises his instrument in front of his body, reverses it so as to show both sides, and then returns it. Company musicians execute inspection similarly.

753. How is the inspection of camp and quarters conducted?

The inspector is accompanied by the captain, followed by the other officers or by such of them as he may designate. The inspection is conducted as described in the company inspection.

Regimental Inspection.

754. How is the regiment inspected?

By the same commands, means, and principles as described in the battalion inspection.

Where does the colonel, his staff, and the color take post?

The color takes post facing to the front and twenty paces in front of the major of the leading battalion. His staff takes post as if mounted. The color takes post five paces in rear of the staff.

How does the inspector begin the inspection?.

He inspects the colonel and lieutenant-colonel, and accompanied by the colonel, inspects the staff officers.

What does the colonel then do?

Be commands: **REST**, returns saber, and, with the lieutenant-colonel and staff, accompanies the inspector.

If the colonel is the inspector, what does he command, and how is the inspection conducted?

He commands: **REST**, returns saber, and inspects the lieutenant-colonel and staff, all of whom then accompany him. The inspector, commencing at the head of the column, makes a minute inspection of the color guard, non-commissioned staff, each battalion in succession, and the band. On the approach of the inspector, each major brings his battalion to **attention**. Battalion inspection follows.

Digitized by Google

MUSTER.

Regimental, Battalion, or Company Muster.

755. What precedes muster?

An inspection and, when practicable, a review.

With what is the adjutant, the surgeon, and each captain provided?

The adjutant, with the muster-roll of the field, staff, and band; the surgeon, with the hospital roll; each captain, with the roll of his company.

What accompanies each roll?

A list of absentees, alphabetically arranged, showing cause and place of absence.

756. Being in column of companies at open ranks, how is the muster conducted?

Each captain, as the mustering officer approaches, brings his company to **right shoulder arms**, and commands: **ATTENTION TO MUSTER.** The mustering officer or captain then calls the names on the roll; each man, as his name is called, answers, "Here!" and brings his piece to **order arms**. After muster, the mustering officer, accompanied by the company commanders and such other officers as he may designate, verifies the presence of the men reported in the hospital on guard, etc.

757. How may a company be mustered on its own parade-ground?

In the same manner; the muster to follow the company inspection.

Honors and Salutes.

758. Where may further rules governing honors, courtesies, etc., be found?

They are prescribed in Army Regulations.

759. What is saluting distance?

It is that within which recognition is easy. In general, it does not exceed thirty paces.

When do individuals or bodies of troops exchange salutes?

In approaching or passing each other within saluting distance, they exchange salutes when at a distance of about six paces. If they

Digitized by Google

do not approach each other that closely, the salute is exchanged at the point of the nearest approach.

760. When are "eyes right" and "present arms" executed by troops?

Only in the ceremonies and in saluting the color.

761. Whom does a commander of a body of troops salute, and how?

All general officers and his regimental, post, battalion, or company commander, by bringing his command to attention and saluting in person. The troops are brought to attention in time to permit the salute to be rendered at the prescribed distance; they are held at attention until after the salute has been acknowledged.

When an officer entitled to the salute passes in rear of a body of troops, what is done?

The body of troops is brought to attention while he is opposite the post of the commander.

What courtesy does a commander of a body of troops show to all other officers senior to him in rank?

He salutes in person, but the troops are not brought to attention, except that a non-commissioned officer commanding a detachment less than a company will bring it to attention before saluting an officer.

What courtesies are exchanged between commanders of bodies of troops, and how?

The commanders exchange salutes; the troops are brought to attention during the exchange.

762. What courtesies are exchanged between an officer commanding a body of troops and all junior officers and enlisted men?

All junior officers and enlisted men salute a senior officer commanding a body of troops, and he acknowledges the salute in person; the command is not brought to attention.

763. What courtesy do enlisted men render all officers, and how?

When covered, all enlisted men within saluting distance and not in ranks salute all officers. The hand is held in the position of salute until the salute has been acknowledged or until the officer has passed or has been passed. If uncovered, stand at attention, without saluting.

What is the rule for officers?

Digitized by Google

When making or receiving official reports, all officers will salute, if covered; if uncovered, they stand at attention.

When under arms, the salute is made with the sword or saber, if drawn, otherwise with the hand. A mounted officer dismounts before addressing a superior not mounted.

On meeting, all officers salute when covered; when uncovered, they exchange the courtesies observed between gentlemen.

Military courtesy requires the junior to salute first, but when the salute is introductory to a report made at a military ceremony or formation to the representative of a common superior—as, for example, to the adjutant, officer of the day, etc.—the officer making the report, whatever his rank, will salute first; the officer to whom the report is made will acknowledge by saluting, if covered, or verbally, if uncovered, that he has received and understood the report.

How do enlisted men armed with the rifle salute?

Out of doors, they salute with the rifle on the right shoulder; if indoors, the rifle salute is rendered at the **order** or **trail.**

764. Are officers not in uniform saluted?

Yes, if recognized.

765. When officers are saluted, what will they do?

They will acknowledge salutes smartly and promptly.

Digitized by Google

PART V.

Manuals.

THE COLOR.

766. What does the word "color" imply, and what does it include?

It implies the national colors; it includes the regimental color when both are present.

Where may be found the rules prescribing the colors to be carried by regiments and battalions on all occasions?

In Army Regulations.

767. When not in use, how and where are the colors kept?

In garrison, they are kept in the office or quarters of the colonel, and are escorted thereto and therefrom by the color guard. In camp, when not in use, they are in front of the colonel's tent. From **reveille** to **retreat**, when the weather permits, they are displayed uncased; from **retreat** to **reveille**, and during inclement weather, they are cased.

When are colors said to be cased?

When furled and protected by the oilcloth covering.

768. When does the regimental color salute?

In the ceremony of escort of the color and when saluting an officer entitled to the honor, but in no other case.

How is the salute executed?

If marching, when at six paces from the officer entitled to the salute; the **carry** is resumed when six paces beyond him.

Does the national color salute?

It renders no salute in the escort of the color.

Digitized by Google

THE COLOR GUARD.

769. What is the color guard, and what are their duties?

It consists of two color-sergeants, who are the color-bearers, and two experienced privates, selected by the colonel. The senior color-sergeant carries the national color; the junior color-sergeant carries the regimental color.

In what order are the colors arranged?

The regimental color, when carried, is always on the left of the national color, in whatever direction they may face.

770. How is the color guard formed and marched?

It is formed and marched in one rank, the color-bearers in the center. It is marched in the same manner and by the same commands as a squad, substituting, when necessary, "guard" for "squad."

771. What is the color company?

It is the center or right center company of the center or the right center battalion.

Where does the color guard remain?

With the color company, unless otherwise directed.

772. Where is the color and color guard posted in the various formations?

In line, the color guard is in the interval between the inner guides of the right and left center companies; in line of columns or in close line, the color guard is midway between the right and left center companies and on line with the captains. In column of companies or platoons, the color guard is midway between the color company and the company in rear of the color company and equidistant from the flanks of the column; in close column, the color guard is on the flank of the color company. In column of squads, the color guard is in the column between the color company and the company originally on its left. When the regiment is formed in line of masses for ceremonies, the color guard forms on the left of the leading company of the center (right center) battalion. It rejoins the color company when the regiment changes from line of masses.

773. When the color is with a battalion that takes the battle formation, where does it go?

It joins the regimental reserve, whose commander directs the color to join a certain company of the reserve.

Digitized by Google

774. What movements in the manual of arms does the color guard execute?

It executes neither loadings nor firings; in rendering honors, it executes all movements in the manual; in drill, all movements, unless excused.

To Receive the Color.

775. What ceremony does the color guard go through on receiving and parting with the color?

By command of the senior color-sergeant, it presents arms on receiving and parting with the color. After parting with the color, the color guard is brought to order arms by the command of the senior member, who is placed as the right man of the guard.

776. At drills and ceremonies, excepting escort of the color, how is the color received?

If present, the color is received by the color company after its formation.

Describe the manner in which the color is received.

The formation of the color company completed, the captain faces to the front; the color guard, conducted by the senior sergeant, approaches from the front and halts at a distance of ten paces from the captain, who then faces about, brings the company to the present, faces to the front, salutes, again faces about, and brings the company to the order. The color guard comes to the present and order at command of the captain, and is then marched by the color-sergeant directly to its post on the left of the color company.

777. When the battalion is dismissed, where does the color go?

The color guard escorts the color to the office or quarters of the colonel.

Manual of the Colors.

778. Describe the position "carry."

The heel of the pike rests in the pocket of the sling; the right hand grasps the pike at the height of the shoulder.

Describe the "order."

The heel of the pike rests on the ground near the right toe, the right hand holding the pike in a vertical position.

Describe the position "parade rest."

The heel of the pike is on the ground, as at the order; the pike

Digitized by Google

is held with both hands in front of the center of the body, left hand uppermost.

How is the "order" resumed?

At the command **Attention,** the left hand assists the right when necessary.

When the troops are at a "shoulder," "port," or "trail," what is the habitual position?

The **carry.**

What motions are executed with the troops?

The order and parade rest.

Describe the color salute.

Being at a carry, slip the right hand up the pike to the height of the eye, then lower the pike by straightening the arm to the front.

THE BAND.

779. How is the band formed?

In two or more ranks, with sufficient intervals between the men and distances between the ranks to permit of a free use of the instruments.

Where does the field music form when united with the band?

In rear of the band.

When the band is not present, where are the posts and what are the movements and duties of the field music?

The same as prescribed for the band.

When a musician is in charge, where is his position?

On the right of the front rank.

In what movements and how does the band conform to the battalion or regiment?

When the battalion or regiment turns about by squads, the band executes the counter-march; when the battalion or regiment executes right, left, or about face, the band faces in the same manner.

In marching, how does the band dress?

Each rank dresses to the right.

Describe the execution of "open ranks."

Each rank of the band takes the distance of three paces from the rank next in front; the drum-major verifies the alignment.

Digitized by Google

What does the field music do at the signal of the drum-major?
It sounds the march, flourishes, or ruffles, and to the color.

780. Where is the post of the drum-major, and what are his duties?
Three paces in front of the center of the front rank, and he gives the signals or commands for the movements of the band as for a squad, substituting in the commands "hand" for "squad."

SIGNALS OF THE DRUM-MAJOR.

781. Describe the position of the staff preparatory to a signal.
Preparatory to a signal the staff is held with the right hand near the head of the staff, hand below the chin, back to the front, ferrule pointed upward and to the right.

Describe the signals "prepare to play" and "play."
Face toward the band and extend the right arm to its full length in the direction of the staff. **Play:** Bring the arm back to its original position in front of the body.

Describe the signals "prepare to cease playing" and "cease playing."
Extend the right arm to its full length in the direction of the staff. **Cease playing:** Bring the arm back to its original position in front of the body.

Describe the signal to "march."
Turn the wrist and bring the staff to the front, the ferrule pointing upward and to the front; extend the arm to its full length in the direction of the staff.

Describe the signal to "halt."
Lower the staff into the raised left hand and raise the staff horizontally above the head with both hands, the arms extended; lower the staff with both hands to a horizontal position at the height of the hips.

Describe the signal to "counter-march."
Face toward the band and give the signal to march.

How is this command executed?
By each front-rank man, to the right of the drum-major, turning to the right about, each man to the left turning to the left about.

Digitized by Google

each followed by the men covering him. The drum-major passes through the center

Describe the signal to "oblique."

Bring the staff to a horizontal position, the head of the staff opposite the neck, the ferrule pointing in the direction the **oblique** is to be made; extend the arm to its full length in the direction of the staff.

Describe the signal to "march by the right flank."

Extend the arm to the right, the staff vertical, ferrule upward, back of the hand to the rear

Describe the signal to "march by the left flank."

Extend the arm to the left, the staff vertical, ferrule upward, back of the hand to the front.

Describe the signal to ' diminish front."

Let the ferrule fall into the left hand at the height of the eyes, right hand at the height of the hip.

Describe the signal to "increase front."

Let the ferrule fall into the left hand at the height of the hip, right hand at the height of the neck.

Describe the signal for the "march," "flourishes," or "ruffles."'

Bring the staff to a vertical position, hand opposite the neck, back of hand to the front, ferrule pointing down.

Describe the signal for "to the color."

Bring the staff to a horizontal position at the height of the neck, back of the hand to the rear, ferrule pointing to the left.

When the band is playing in marching, what does the drum-major do?

He beats the time with his staff and supports the left hand at the hip, fingers in front, thumb to the rear.

Before making an official report, what does the drum-major do?

The drum-major, with staff in hand, salutes by bringing his staff to a vertical position, head of the staff up and opposite the left shoulder.

Marching in review, what does the drum-major do?

The drum-major, with staff in hand, salutes by bringing his staff to a vertical position, head of the staff up and opposite the left shoulder.

What position does the drum-major take when the band is at a halt and not playing?

Digitized by Google

He holds his staff with the ferrule touching the ground about one inch from the toe of right foot at an angle of about 60 degrees, ball pointing upward to the right, right hand grasping the staff near the ball, back of the hand to the front; left hand at the hip, fingers in front, thumb to the rear.

MANUAL OF THE SABER.

782. What is the command for "draw saber," and how is it executed?

1. Draw, 2. SABER. At the command **Draw,** unhook the saber with the thumb and first two fingers of the left hand, thumb on the end of the hook, fingers lifting the upper ring; grasp the scabbard with the left hand at the upper band, bring the hilt a little forward, seize the grip with the right hand, and draw the blade six inches out of the scabbard, pressing the scabbard against the thigh with the left hand. At the command **Saber,** draw the saber quickly, raising the arm to its full extent to the right front at an angle of about 45 degrees with the horizontal, the saber, edge down, in a straight line with arm; make a slight pause, and bring the back of the blade against the shoulder, edge to the front, arm nearly extended, hand by the side, elbow back, third and fourth fingers back of the grip; at the same time hook up the scabbard with the thumb and first two fingers of the left hand, thumb through the upper ring, fingers supporting it; drop the left hand by the side.

What is this position called?

The position of **carry saber dismounted.**

What do officers and non-commissioned officers armed with the saber do before mounting?

They unhook the scabbard.

Describe the "draw saber" when mounted?

In the first motion of **draw saber,** they reach with the right hand over the bridle-hand and, without the aid of the bridle-hand, draw the saber as before; the right hand at the carry rests on the right thigh.

On foot, how is the scabbard carried?

Hooked up.

783. When publishing orders, calling the roll, etc., how is the saber held?

Suspended from the right wrist by the saber-knot.

Digitized by Google

When the saber-knot is used, how is it put on and taken off the wrist?

It is placed on the wrist before drawing saber and taken off after returning saber.

784. Being at the "order" or "carry," what is the command for "present saber," and how is it executed?

1. Present, 2. SABER (or **ARMS**). At the command **Present,** raise and carry the saber to the front, base of the hilt as high as the chin and six inches in front of the neck, edge to the left, point six inches farther to the front than the hilt, thumb extended on the left of the grip, all fingers grasping the grip.

At the command **Saber,** or **Arms,** lower the saber, point in prolongation of the right foot and near the ground, edge to the left, hand by the side, thumb on left of grip, arm extended. If mounted, the hand is held behind the thigh, point a little to the right and front of the stirrup.

How is this movement executed in rendering honors with troops?

Officers execute the first motion of the salute at the command **Present,** the second motion at the command **Arms;** enlisted men with the saber execute the first motion at the command **Arms,** and omit the second motion.

785. Being at a "carry," what is the command for bringing the saber to the "order," and how is it executed?

1. Order, 2. SABER (or **ARMS**). Drop the point of the saber directly to the front, point on or near the ground, edge down, thumb on back of grip.

Being at the "present saber," what motion do officers and noncommissioned officers armed with the saber make, should the next command be "Order arms"?

They come to the **order saber.**

If the command be other than "Order arms," what do they do?

They execute **carry saber.**

When arms are brought to the "order," what do they do?

They **order saber.**

786. When is the saber held at the "carry"?

While giving commands, marching at attention, or changing position in quick time.

Digitized by Google

In the execution of the manual of arms, at what motions is the saber brought to the "carry," when at the "order"?

When arms are brought to any position except the **present** or **parade rest.**

787. Being at the "order," give the command and describe "Parade rest."

1. Parade, 2. REST. Take the position of **parade rest** except that the left hand is uppermost and rests on the right hand, point of saber on or near the ground in front of the center of the body, edge to the right.

What is done at the command "Attention"?

Resume the **order saber** and the **position of the soldier.**

788. In marching in double time, how is the saber carried?

Diagonally across the breast, edge to the front; the left hand steadies the scabbard.

789. When do officers and non-commissioned officers armed with the saber draw and return saber?

When they are on duties under arms, they draw and return saber without waiting for command. All commands to soldiers under arms are given with the saber drawn.

790. Being at a "carry," give the command and describe "Return saber."

1. Return, 2. SABER. At the command **Return**, carry the right hand opposite to and six inches from the left shoulder, saber vertical, edge to the left, at the same time unhook and lower the scabbard with the left hand and grasp it at the upper band. At the command **Saber**, drop the point to the rear and pass the blade across and along the left arm; turn the head slightly to the left, fixing the eyes on the opening of the scabbard, raise the right hand, insert and return the blade; free the wrist from the saber-knot (if inserted in it), turn the head to the front, drop the right hand by the side; hook up the scabbard with the left hand, drop the left hand by the side.

How does the "return saber" when mounted differ from the above?

The saber is returned without using the left hand; the scabbard is hooked up on dismounting.

791. At inspection, what do enlisted men with the saber drawn do?

Digitized by Google

They execute the first motion of **present saber,** and turn the wrist to show both sides of the blade, resuming the **carry** when the inspector has passed.

MANUAL OF TENT-PITCHING.

SHELTER-TENTS.

792. Give the command and describe the formation for pitching shelter-tents.

Being in line or in column of platoons, the captain commands: **FORM FOR SHELTER-TENTS.** The officers, first sergeant, and guides, fall out; the cooks form a file on the flank of the company nearest the kitchen; the first sergeant and right guide fall in, forming the right file of the company; blank files are filled in by the file-closers or by men taken from the front rank; the remaining guide or guides and file-closers form on a convenient flank. Before forming column of platoons, preparatory to pitching tents, the company may be redivided into two or more platoons, regardless of the size of each.

793. What does the captain then do?

He causes the company to take intervals as described in the School of the Squad, and commands: **PITCH TENTS.**

Describe the execution of this command.

At the command **Pitch tents,** each man steps off obliquely to the right with the right foot and lays his rifle on the ground, the butt of the rifle near the toe of the right foot, muzzle to the front, barrel to the left, and steps back into his place; each front-rank man then draws his bayonet and sticks it in the ground by the outside of the right heel. Equipments are unslung, packs opened, shelter-half and pins removed; each man then spreads his shelter-half, small triangle to the rear, flat upon the ground the tent is to occupy, the rear-rank man's half on the right. The halves are then buttoned together; the guy-loops at both ends of the lower half are passed through the button-holes provided in the lower and upper halves; the whipped end of the guy-rope is then passed through both guy-loops and secured, this at both ends of the tent. Each front-rank man inserts the muzzle of his rifle under the front end of the ridge and holds the rifle upright, sling to the front, heel of butt on the ground beside the bayonet. His rear-rank man pins down the front corners of the tent on the line of bayonets, stretching the tent taut; he then inserts a pin in the eye of the front guy-rope and drives the pin at such a distance in front of the rifle as to hold the rope taut: both men go to the rear of the tent, each pins down a corner, stretching the

Digitized by Google

sides and rear of the tent before securing; the rear-rank man then inserts an intrenching tool, or a bayonet in its scabbard, under the rear end of the ridge inside the tent, the front-rank man pegging down the end of the guy-ropes; the rest of the pins are then driven by both men, the rear-rank man working on the right. The front flaps of the tent are not fastened down, but thrown back on the tent.

What does each man do as soon as the tent is pitched?

He arranges his equipment and the contents of his pack in the tent and stands at attention in front of his own half on line with the front guy-rope pin.

When the tents are pitched, how is a uniform slope of the guy-ropes obtained?

The guy ropes should all be of the same length.

In shelter-tent camps how may tent-poles be improvised?

In shelter-tent camps, in localities where suitable material is procurable, tent-poles may be improvised and used in lieu of the rifle and bayonet or intrenching tool as supports for the shelter-tent.

794. When the pack is not carried, how is the company formed and shelter-tents pitched?

The company is formed for shelter-tents, intervals are taken, arms are laid aside or on the ground, the men are dismissed and proceed to the wagon, secure their packs, return to their places, and pitch tents as heretofore described.

795. How may double shelter-tents be pitched?

By first pitching one tent as heretofore described, then pitching a second tent against the opening of the first, using one rifle to support both tents, and passing the front guy-ropes over and down the sides of the opposite tents. The front corner of one tent is not pegged down, but is thrown back to permit an opening into the tent.

SINGLE SLEEPING-BAG.

796. Describe how a single sleeping-bag may be made from the poncho and the blanket.

Spread the poncho on the ground, buttoned end at the feet, buttoned side to the left; fold the blanket once across its short dimension and lay it on the poncho, folded side along the right side of the poncho; tie the blanket together along the left side by means of the tapes provided; fold the left half of the poncho over the blanket and button it together along the side and bottom.

DOUBLE SLEEPING-BAG.

797. Describe how a double sleeping-bag may be made from two ponchos and the blankets.

Digitized by Google

Spread one poncho on the ground, buttoned end at the feet, buttoned side to the left; spread the blankets on top of the poncho; tie the edges of the blankets together with the tapes provided; spread a second poncho on top of the blankets, buttoned end at the feet, buttoned side to the right; button the two ponchos together along both sides and across the end.

To Strike Shelter-Tents.

798. Give the command and describe the breaking of shelter-tent camp.

The men standing in front of their tents, the command is: **STRIKE TENTS.** Equipments and rifles are removed from the tents; the tents are lowered, packs made up, and equipments slung, and the men stand at **attention** in the places originally occupied after taking intervals.

Common and Wall Tents.

799. How many men does it take to pitch a common or wall tent? and describe the method to be used.

Four men pitch each tent. Drive a pin to mark the center of the door; spread the tent on the ground to be occupied; place door-loops over the door-pin; draw front corners taut, aligned, and peg them down; lace rear door, if necessary; draw rear corners taut in both directions and peg them down; the four corner guy-pins are then driven in prolongation of the diagonals of the tent and about two paces beyond the corner pins; temporarily loosen the front door and the lee corner loops from the pins; insert uprights and ridge-pole, inserting the pole-pins in ridge-pole and in eyelets of tent and fly; raise the tent; hold it in position; replace lee corner loops, and secure corner and fly guy-ropes; tighten same to hold poles vertical; drive wall pins through the loops as they hang; drive intermediate guy-pins, aligning them on corner pins already driven.

The Pyramidal Tent.

800. How many men does it take to pitch a pyramidal tent? and describe the method to be used.

One squad pitches each tent. The corporal drives a pin to mark the center of the door. The others of the squad unfold the tent and spread it out on the ground to be occupied, pole and tripod underneath. The corporal places the door-loops over the door-pin;

Digitized by Google

one man goes to each corner of the tent; the two men in front draw the front corners taut, align the front of the tent with the company line of tents, and peg the corners down; the two men in rear draw the rear corners taut in both directions and peg them down; the same four men drive the four corner guy-pins in prolongation of the diagonals of the tent, about two paces beyond the corner pins. Meantime, the other men of the squad, having crept under the tent, insert the tent-pole spindle in top plate, the corporal placing the hood in position; the pole is raised, and the lower end inserted in the tripod socket; the tripod is raised to its proper height. Under the supervision of the corporal, the men inside the tent shift the tripod, and the men outside the tent handle the corner guy-lines in such manner as to erect the tent with the corner eaves directly above the corner pins. Each outside man, moving to the left, drives pins for the wall-loops along one side of the tent, and, returning, drives the intermediate guy-pins; in both cases the pins are aligned on the corner pins. The inside men assist.

CONICAL WALL TENT.

801. How is the conical wall tent erected?

Drive the door-pin and the center-pin 8 feet 3 inches apart; using the hood-lines, with center-pin as center, describe two concentric circles 8 feet 3 inches and 11 feet 3 inches; in the outer circle with radii, drive two door guy-pins 3 feet apart: at intervals of about 3 feet drive the other guy-pins. In other respects, conical tents are erected practically as in the case of pyramidal tents.

TO STRIKE COMMON, WALL, PYRAMIDAL, AND CONICAL WALL TENTS.

802. At what command and how are the above-described tents taken down?

The command is: **STRIKE TENTS.** The men first remove all pins, except those of the four corner and guy-ropes, or the four quadrant guy-ropes in the case of the conical wall tent. The pins are neatly piled or placed in their receptacle. One man holds each guy, and when the ground is clear, the tent is lowered, folded, or rolled and tied, the poles or tripod and pole fastened together, and the remaining pins collected.

TO FOLD TENTS.

803. Describe the method of folding the various kinds of tents.

For folding common, wall, hospital, and storage-tents: Spread

Digitized by Google

the tent flat on the ground, folded at the ridge, so that bottoms of side walls are even, ends of tent forming triangles to the right and left; fold the triangular ends of the tent in toward the middle, making it rectangular in shape; fold the top over about nine inches; fold the tent in two by carrying the top fold over clear to the foot; fold again in two from the top to the foot; throw all guys on tent, except the second from each end; fold the ends in so as to cover about two-thirds of the second cloths; fold the left end over to meet the turned-in edge of the right end, then fold the right end over the top, completing the bundle; tie with the two exposed guys.

For folding pyramidal tents: The tent is thrown toward the rear and the back wall and roof canvas pulled out smooth. This may be most easily accomplished by leaving the rear-corner wall-pins in the ground with the wall-loops attached, one man at each rear-corner guy and one holding the square iron in a perpendicular position and pulling the canvas to its limit away from the former front of the tent. This leaves the three remaining sides of the tent on top of the rear side, with the door side in the middle.

Now carry the right-front corner over and lay it on the left-rear corner. Pull all canvas smooth, throw guys toward square iron, and pull bottom edges even. Then take the right-front corner and return to the right, covering the right-rear corner. This folds the right side of the tent on itself, with the crease in the middle and under the front side of tent.

Next carry the left-front corner to the right and back, as described above; this, when completed, will leave the front and rear sides of the tent lying smooth and flat and the two side walls folded inward, each on itself.

Place the hood in the square iron which has been folded downward toward the bottom of tent, and continue to fold around the square iron as a core, pressing all folds down flat and smooth and parallel with the bottom of the tent. If each fold is compactly made and the canvas kept smooth, the last fold will exactly cover the lower edge of the canvas. Lay all exposed guys along the folded canvas, except the two on the center width, which should be pulled out and away from bottom edge to their extreme length for tying. Now, beginning at one end, fold toward the center on the first seam (that joining the first and second widths) and fold again toward the center, so that the already-folded canvas will come to within about 3 inches of the middle width; then fold over to the opposite edge of the middle width of canvas; then begin folding from opposite

Digitized by Google

end, folding the first width in half, then making a second fold to come within about 4 or 5 inches of that already folded; turn this fold entirely over that already folded. Take the exposed guys and draw them taut across each other, turn bundle over on the under guy, cross guys on top of bundle, drawing tight; turn bundle over on the crossed guys and tie lengthwise.

When properly tied and pressed together, this will make a package 11 by 23 by 34 inches, requiring about 8,855 cubic inches to store or pack.

Stencil the organization destination on the lower half of the middle width of canvas in the back wall.

What is the advantage of this method of folding?

It should place the wall on the outside of the bundle and protect the roof of the tent from damage.

MANUAL OF THE BUGLE

Warning Calls.

804. What are the warning calls, and when are they sounded?

First call, guard-mounting, full dress, overcoats, drill, stable, water, and **boots and saddles** are the warning calls, and they precede the **assembly** by such interval as may be prescribed by the commanding officer.

What service calls may be classified and used as warning calls?

Mess, church, and **fatigue** calls.

What is "first call"?

It is the first signal for formation for roll-call and for all ceremonies, except guard-mounting.

What is "guard-mounting"?

It is the first signal for guard-mounting.

What does the field music do at "first call" and "guard-mounting"?

It assembles.

In a mixed command, what is the significance of "boots and saddles"?

It is the signal to mounted troops that their formation is to be mounted; for mounted guard-mounting or mounted drill, it immediately follows the signal **guard-mounting** or **drill.**

When full dress or overcoats are to be worn, when are the signals "full dress" or "overcoat" sounded?

They immediately follow **first call. guard-mounting,** or **boots and saddles.**

Digitized by Google

FORMATION CALLS.

805. Describe the use of the signals "assembly," "adjutant's call," and "to the color."

Assembly is the signal for companies or details to fall in.

Adjutant's call is the signal for companies to form battalion; also for guard details to form for guard-mounting on the camp or garrison parade-ground; it follows the **assembly** at such interval as may be prescribed by the commanding officer; it is also used as a signal for the battalion to form regiment, following the first **adjutant's call** at such interval as the commanding officer may prescribe.

To the color is sounded when the color salutes.

ALARM CALLS.

806. What are the alarm calls and their significance?

Fire call is the signal for men to fall in, without arms, to extinguish fire.

To arms, the signal for the men to fall in, under arms, on their company parade-grounds as quickly as possible.

To horse, the signal for mounted men to proceed, under arms, to their horses, saddle, mount, and assemble at a designated place as quickly as possible. In extended order, this signal is used to remount troops.

SERVICE CALLS.

807. What are the service calls?

Tattoo, taps, mess, sick, church, recall, issue, officers', captains', first sergeants', fatigue, school, and **the general.**

What is "the general"?

It is the signal for striking tents and loading wagons preparatory to marching.

When are "reveille" and "retreat" sounded?

Reveille precedes the **assembly** for roll-call; **retreat** follows the **assembly**, the interval between being only that required for formation and roll-call, except when there is parade.

What is "taps," and when is it sounded?

It is the signal for extinguishing lights; it is usually preceded by the call **to quarters** at such interval as prescribed by Army Regulations.

What calls are sounded by all the field music united, and, as a rule, by whom are the other calls sounded?

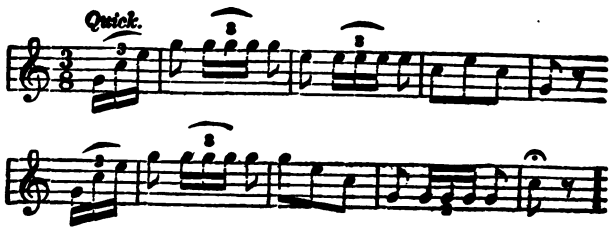
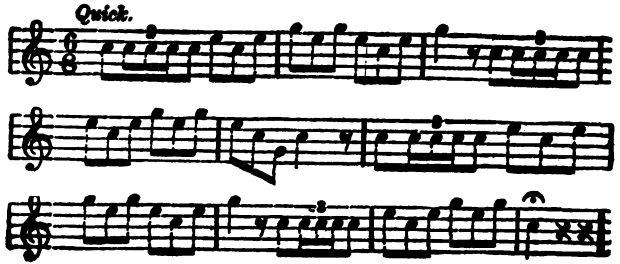
Assembly, reveille, retreat, adjutants' call, to the color, the flourishes, ruffles, and the **marches.** The other calls, as a rule, are sounded by the musician of the guard or orderly musician; he may also sound the **assembly** when the musicians are not united.

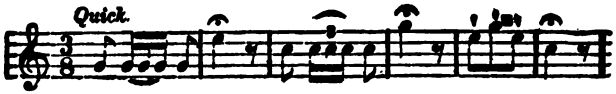
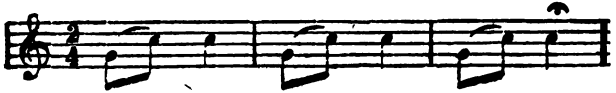
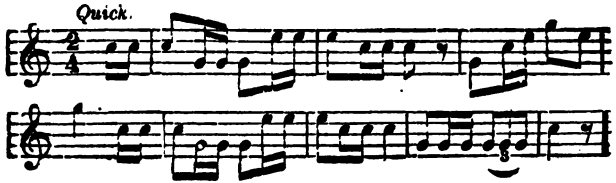
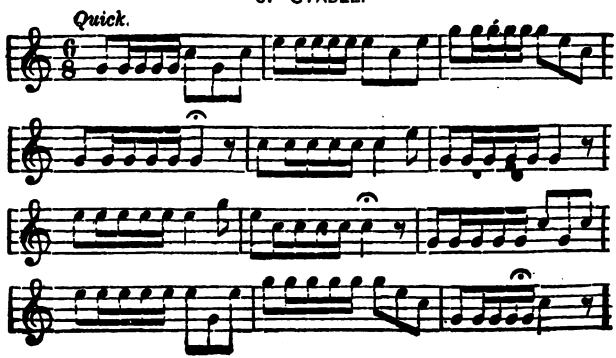
Digitized by Google

When are the morning and evening guns fired?

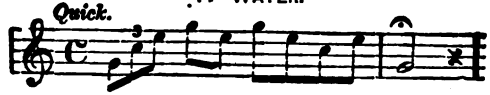
The morning gun is fired at the first note of **reveille, or, if marches** be played before **reveille**, it is fired at the commencement of the first **march.** The evening gun is fired at the last **note of retreat.**

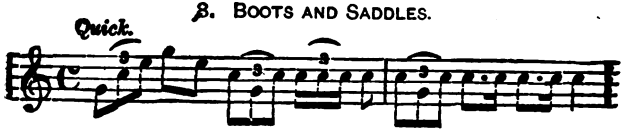
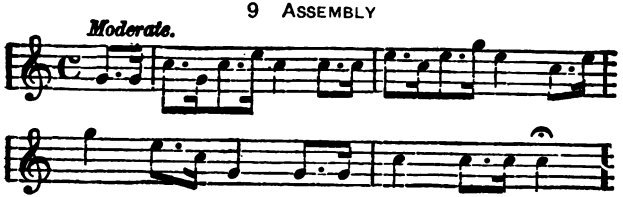
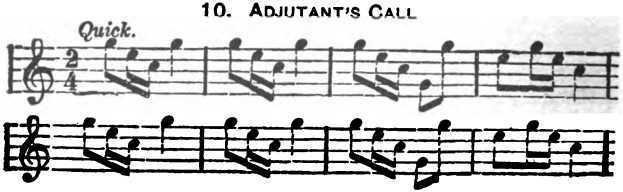
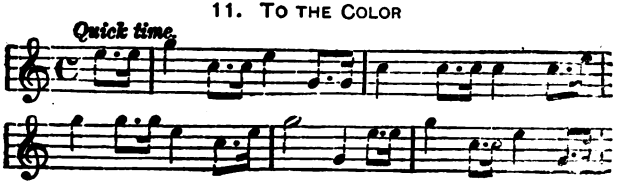
BUGLE CALLS.

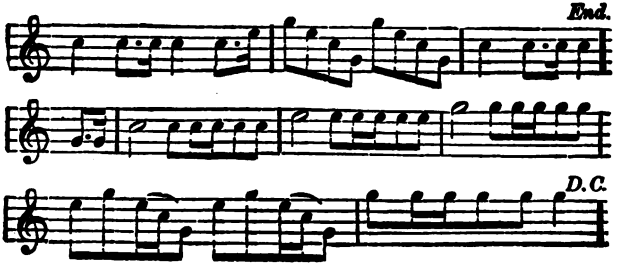
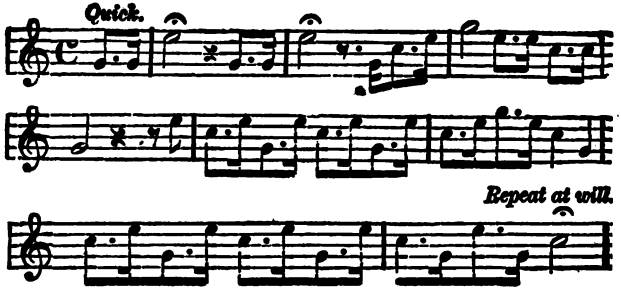
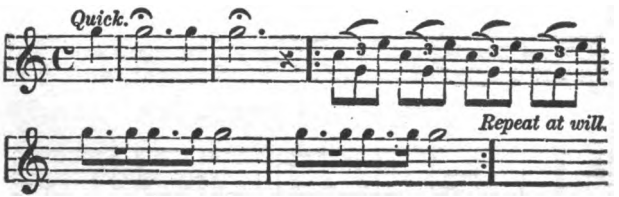
1. FIRST CALL.

2. GUARD MOUNTING.

Digitized by Google

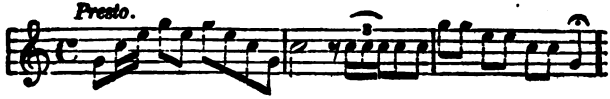
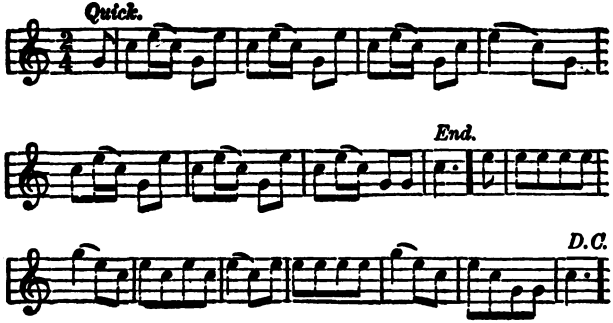
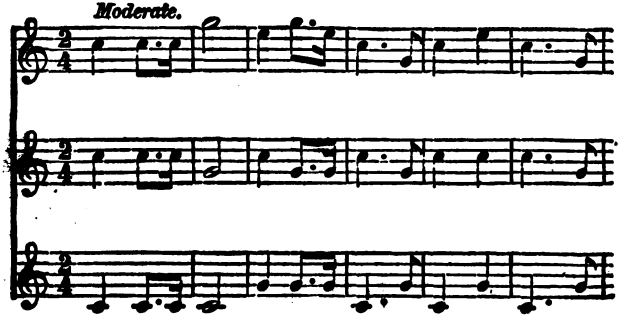
3. FULL DRESS.

4. OVERCOATS.

5. DRILL.

6. STABLE.

Digitized by Google

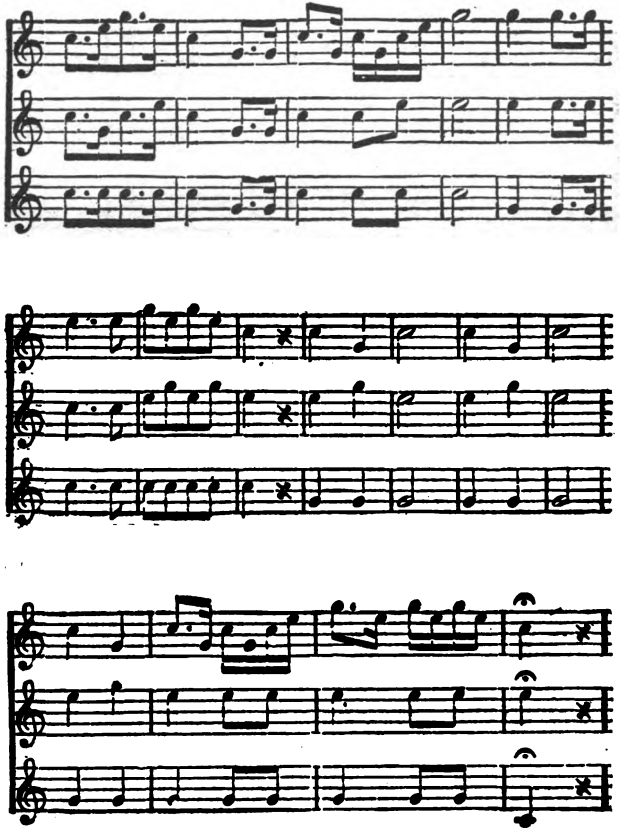
7. WATER.

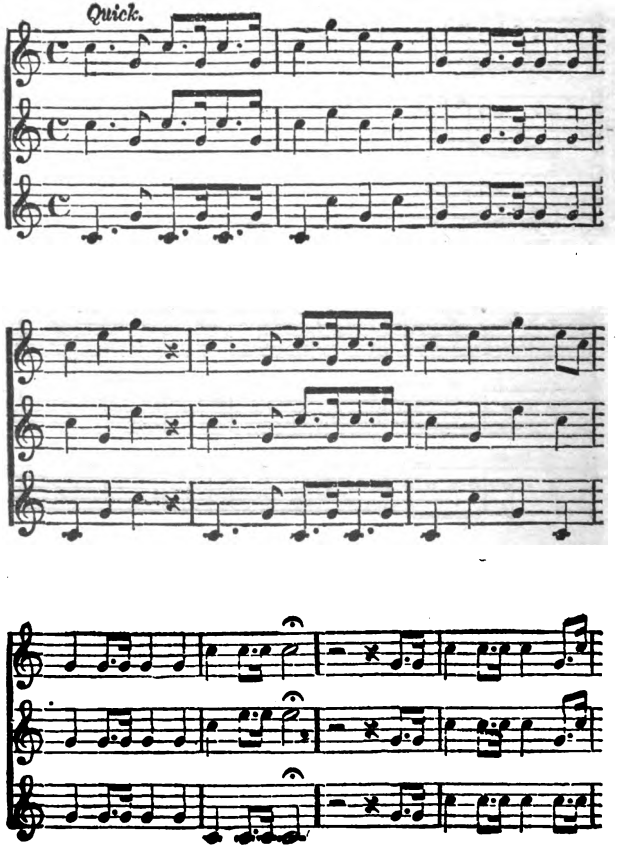


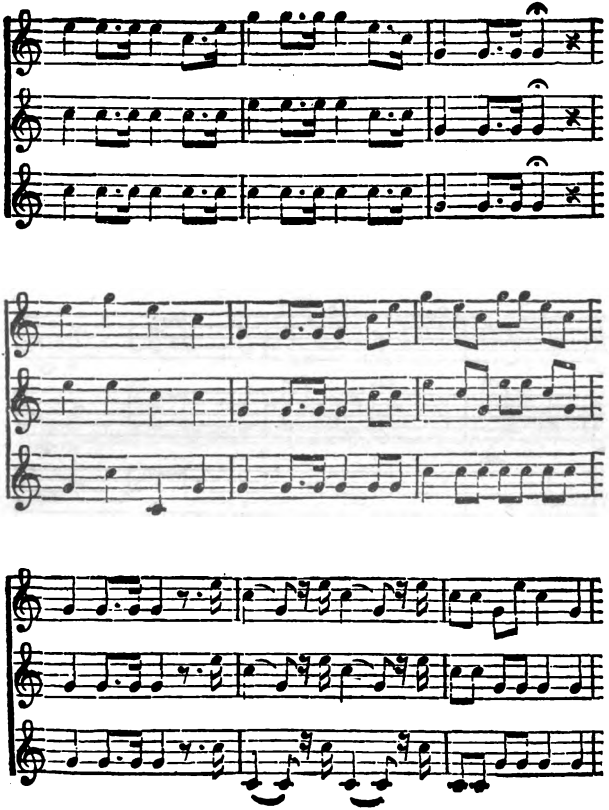
8. BOOTS AND SADDLES.

9 ASSEMBLY

10. ADJUTANT'S CALL

11. TO THE COLOR

Digitized by Google

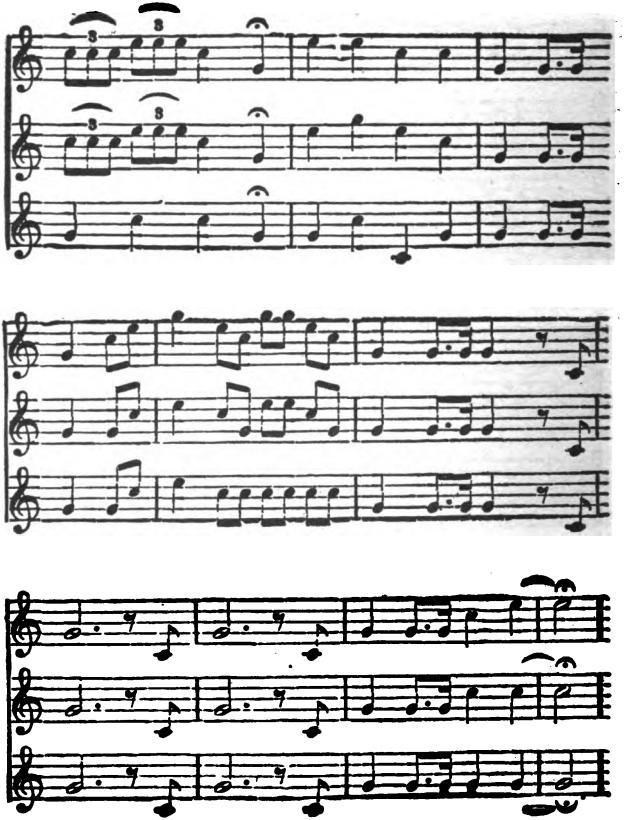
TO THE COLOR—*Concluded.*

12. FIRE.

13. TO ARMS.

Digitized by Google

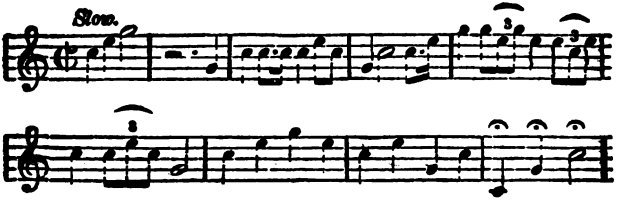
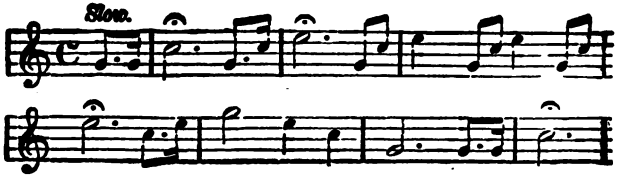
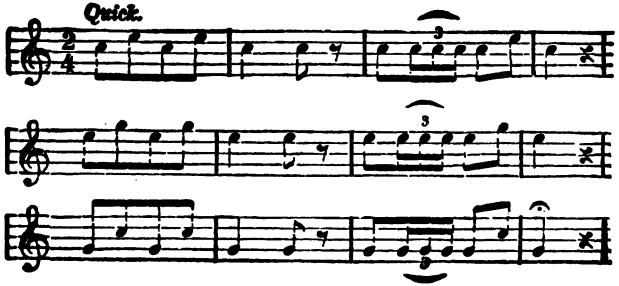
14. TO HORSE.

15. REVEILLE.

16. RETREAT.

Digitized by Google

RETREAT—*Concluded.*

Digitized by Google

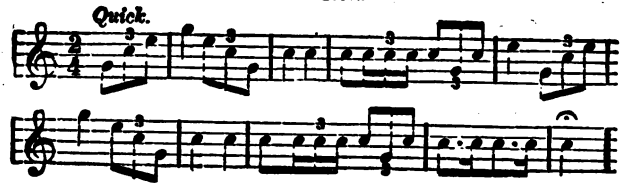
17. TATTOO.

Digitized by Google

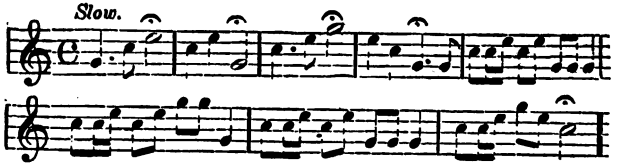
TATTOO—*Continued.*

Digitized by Google

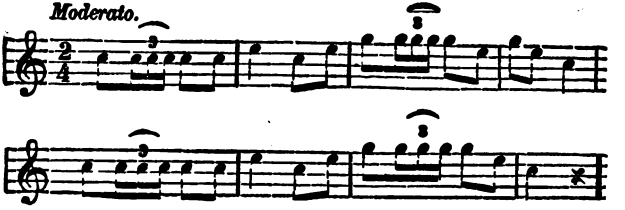
TATTOO—*Concluded.*

Digitized by Google

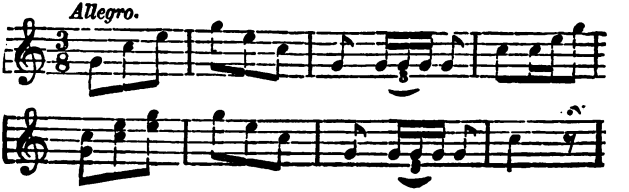
18. CALL TO QUARTERS.

19. TAPS.

20. MESS.

Digitized by Google

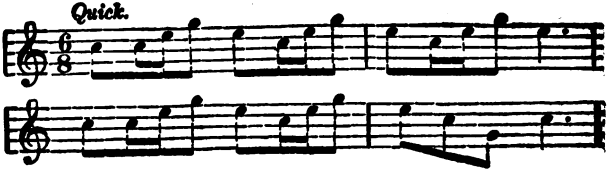
21. SICK.



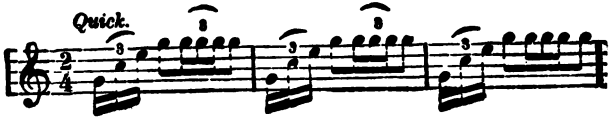
22. CHURCH.

23. RECALL.

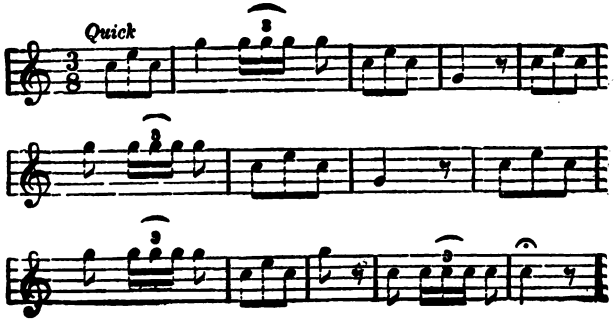


24. ISSUE.

Digitized by Google

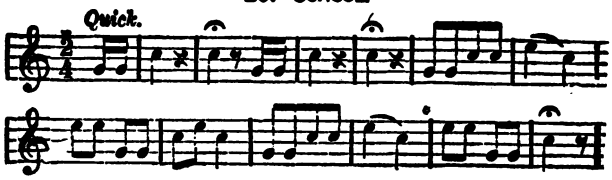
25. OFFICERS' CALL.

26. CAPTAINS' CALL.

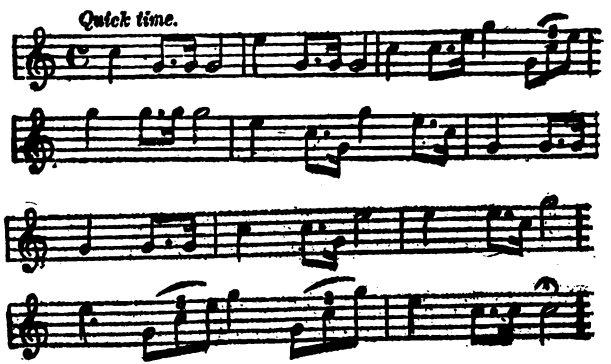
27 FIRST SERGEANTS' CALL.

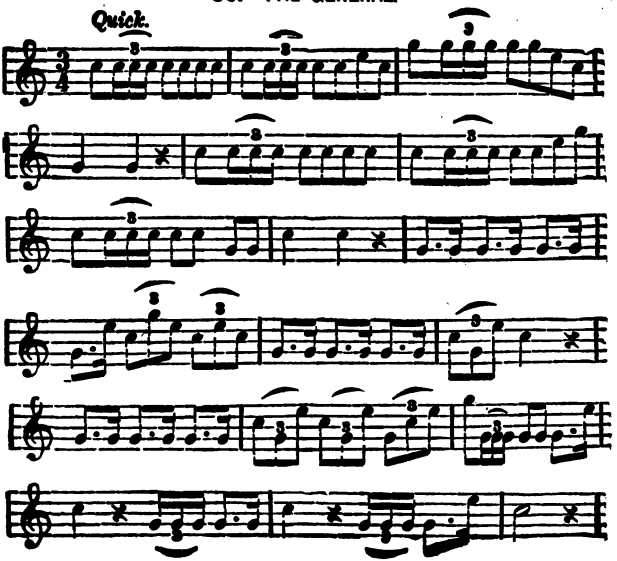
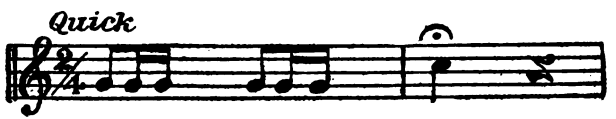


28. FATIGUE.

Digitized by Google

29. SCHOOL.



29½. THE GENERAL MARCH.

Digitized by Google

30. THE GENERAL.

30½. FLOURISHES FOR REVIEW.

Digitized by Google

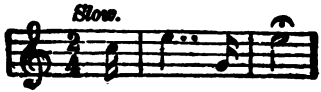
BUGLE SIGNALS.

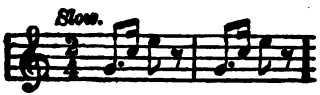
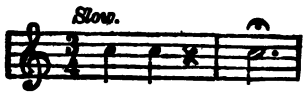
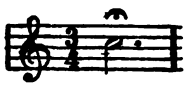
See paragraph 41.

---

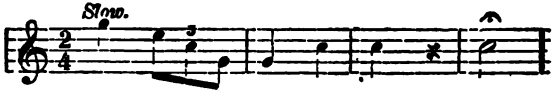
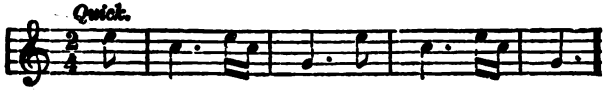
31. ASSEMBLE. MARCH.
Same as *Assembly*, No. 9.

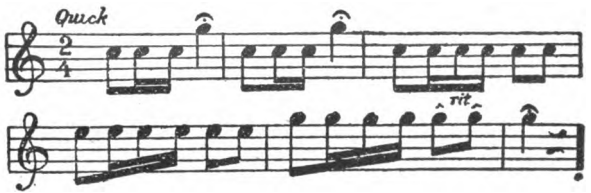
32. ATTENTION.

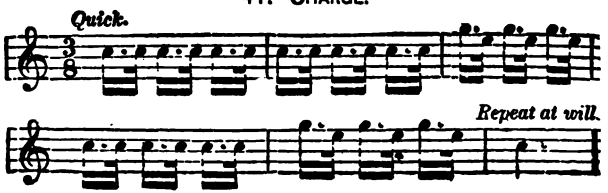


33. ATTENTION TO ORDERS.

34. FORWARD. MARCH.

35. HALT.

36. DOUBLE TIME. MARCH.

Digitized by Google

37. TO THE REAR. MARCH.

38. COMMENCE FIRING.

39. CEASE FIRING.

40. FIX BAYONETS.

41. CHARGE.



Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Appendix to Infantry Drill Regulations.

1911.

To what troops only do paragraphs 747, 792, 793, 794, 795, 796 797, and 798, Infantry Drill Regulations, 1911, apply?

Only to troops equipped with the infantry equipment, model 1910.

What provision is made for troops equipped under General Orders, No. 23, War Department, 1906, and orders amendatory thereof?

The alternative paragraphs herewith will govern.

747. If the inspection is to include an examination of the blanket-rolls, what does the captain do?

Before dismissing the company, and after inspecting the file-closers, the captain directs the lieutenants to remain in place, closes ranks, stacks arms, dresses the company back to four paces from the stacks, takes intervals, and commands: **1. Unsling, 2. PACKS; 3. Open, 4. PACKS.**

How is this command executed?

At the second command, each man unslings his roll and places it on the ground at his feet, rounded end to the front, square end of shelter-half to the right. At the fourth command the rolls are untied, laid perpendicular to the front, with the triangular end of the shelter-half to the front, opened, and unrolled to the left; each man prepares the contents of his roll for inspection, and resumes the attention. The captain then returns saber, passes along the ranks and file-closers as before, inspects the rolls, returns to the right, draws saber, and commands: **1. Close, 2. PACKS.**

How is this command executed?

At the second command, each man, with his shelter-half smoothly spread on the ground with buttons up and triangular end to the front, folds his blanket once across its length, and places it on the shelter-half, fold toward the bottom edge one-half inch from

Digitized by Google

the square end, the same amount of canvas uncovered at the top and bottom. He then places the parts of the pole on the side of the blanket next the square end of the shelter-half, near and parallel to the fold, end of pole about six inches from the edge of the blanket; nests the pins similarly near the opposite edge of the blanket, and distributes the other articles carried in the roll; folds the triangular end and then the exposed portion of the bottom of the shelter-half over the blanket. The two men in each file roll and fasten the roll of the front- and then the rear-rank man. The file-closers work similarly two and two, or with the front-rank man of a blank file. Each pair stands on the folded side, rolls the blanket-roll closely, and buckles the straps, passing the end of the strap through both keeper and buckle, back over the buckle, and under the keeper. With the roll so lying on the ground that the edge of the shelter-half can just be seen when looking vertically downward, one end is bent upward and over to meet the other, a clove hitch is taken with the guy-rope, first around the end to which it is attached and then around the other end, adjusting the length of rope between hitches to suit the wearer. As soon as a file completes its two rolls, each man places his roll in the position it was in after being unslung, and stands at attention. All the rolls being completed, the captain commands: **1. Sling, 2. PACKS.**

How is this command executed?

At the second command, the rolls are slung, the end containing the pole to the rear

What is done next?

The company is assembled, takes arms, and the captain completes the inspection as before.

792. Being in line or in column of platoons, how does the captain prepare the company for pitching shelter-tents?

He commands: **FORM FOR SHELTER TENTS.**

How is this command executed?

The officers, first sergeant, and guides fall out; the cooks form a file on the flank of the company nearest the kitchen; the first sergeant and right guide fall in, forming the right file of the company; blank files are filled in by file-closers or by men taken from the front rank; the remaining guide or guides and file-closers form on a convenient flank. Before forming column of platoons, preparatory to pitching tents, the company may be redivided into two or more platoons, regardless of the size of each.

Digitized by Google

793. Being formed for shelter-tents, how is the company extended?

The captain causes the company to take intervals as described in the School of the Squad, and commands: **PITCH TENTS.**

How is this command executed?

At the command **Pitch tents,** each man steps off obliquely to the right with the right foot and lays his rifle on the ground, the butt of the rifle near the toe of the right foot, muzzle to the front, barrel to the left, and steps back into his place; each front-rank man then draws his bayonet and sticks it in the ground by the outside of the right heel. All unsling and open the blanket-rolls and take out the shelter-half, poles, and pins. Each then spreads his shelter-half, triangle to the rear, flat upon the ground the tent is to occupy, rear-rank man's half on the right. The halves are then buttoned together. Each front-rank man joins his pole, inserts the top in the eyes of the halves, and holds the pole upright beside the bayonet placed in the ground; his rear-rank man using the pins in front, pins down the front corners of the tent on the line of bayonets, stretching the canvas taut; he then inserts a pin in the eye of the rope and drives the pin at such distance in front of the pole as to hold the rope taut. Both then go to the rear of the tent; the rear-rank man adjusts the pole and the front-rank man drives the pins. The rest of the pins are then driven by both men, the rear-rank man working on the right.

As soon as the tent is pitched, each man arranges the contents of the blanket-roll in the tent and stands at attention in front of his own half on line with the front guy-rope pin.

The guy ropes, to have a uniform slope when the shelter tents are pitched, should all be of the same length.

794. How are tents pitched when the blanket-roll is not carried?

Intervals are taken as described above; the position of the front pole is marked with a bayonet, and equipments are laid aside. The men then proceed to the wagon, secure their rolls, return to their places, and pitch tents as heretofore described.

795. Give the commands and describe how to pitch double shelter-tents.

The captain gives the same commands as before, except **Take half interval** is given instead of **Take interval.** In taking interval, each man follows the preceding man at two paces. The captain then commands: **PITCH DOUBLE TENTS.** The first sergeant places himself on the right of the right guide and with him pitches a single shelter-tent. Only the odd numbers of the front rank mark

Digitized by Google

the line with the bauonet. The tent is formed by buttoning together the square ends of two single tents. Two complete tents, except one pole, are used. Two guy-ropes are used at each end, the guy-pins being placed in front of the corner pins. The tents are pitched by numbers 1 and 2, front and rear rank, and by numbers 3 and 4, front and rear rank; the men falling in on the left are numbered, counting off if necessary All the men spread their shelter-halves on the ground the tent is to occupy. Those of the front rank are placed with the triangular ends to the front. All four halves are then buttoned together, first the ridges and then the square ends. The front corners of the tent are pinned by the front-rank men, the odd numbers holding the poles, the even numbers driving the pins. The rear-rank men similarly pin the rear corners. While the odd numbers steady the poles, each even number of the front rank takes his pole and enters the tent, where, assisted by the even number of the rear rank, he adjusts the pole to the center eyes of the shelter-halves in the following order: (1) The lower half of the front tent; (2) the lower half of the rear tent; (3) the upper half of the front tent; (4) the upper half of the rear tent. The guy-ropes are then adjusted. The tents having been pitched, the triangular ends are turned back, contents of the rolls arranged, and the men stand at attention, each opposite his own shelter-half and facing out from the tent.

796. Omitted.

797. Omitted.

Digitized by Google

APPENDIX

TO

INFANTRY DRILL REGULATIONS, 1911.

WAR DEPARTMENT,
OFFICE OF THE CHIEF OF STAFF,
Washington, December 2, 1911.

The Infantry Drill Regulations, 1911, have been prepared for the use of troops armed with the United States magazine rifle, model 1903. For the guidance of organizations armed with the United States magazine rifle, model 1898, the following alternative paragraphs are published and will be considered as substitute paragraphs for the corresponding paragraphs in the text: 75 (in part), 96, 98, 99, 134, 139, 141, 142, 148, and 150.

By order of the Secretary of War:

LEONARD WOOD,
Major-General, Chief of Staff.

75. * * *

Third. The cut-off is kept turned down, except when using the magazine.

* * * * * *

96. Being at **order arms**: 1. **Unfix, BAYONET.**

If the bayonet scabbard is carried on the belt: Take the position of **parade rest**, grasp the handle of the bayonet firmly with the right hand, press the spring with the forefinger of the left hand, raise the bayonet until the handle is about six inches above the muzzle of the piece, drop the point to the left, back of hand toward the body, and, glancing at the scabbard, return the bayonet, the blade passing between the left arm and body; regrasp the piece with the right hand, and resume the **order.**

Digitized by Google

If the bayonet scabbard is carried on the haversack: Take the bayonet from the rifle with the left hand and return it to the scabbard in the most convenient manner.

If marching or lying down, the bayonet is fixed and unfixed in the most expeditious and convenient manner, and the piece returned to the original position.

Fix and unfix bayonet are executed with promptness and regularity, but not in cadence.

98. Being at **order arms**: 1. **Inspection, 2. ARMS.**

At the second command, take the position of **port arms.** (**TWO**) With the right hand open the magazine gate, turn the bolt handle up, draw the bolt back, and glance at the magazine and chamber. Having found them empty, or having emptied them, raise the head and eyes to the front.

99. Being at **inspection arms**: 1. **Order (Right shoulder, port), 2. ARMS.**

At the preparatory command, push the bolt forward, turn the handle down, close the magazine gate, pull the trigger, and resume **port arms.** At the command **ARMS,** complete the movement ordered.

134. Pieces being loaded and in the position of **load,** to execute other movements with the pieces loaded: 1. **Lock, 2. PIECES.**

At the command **PIECES,** turn the safety lock fully to the right.

The safety lock is said to be at the "ready" when turned to the left, and at the "safe" when turned to the right.

The cut-off is said to be "on" when turned up, and "off" when turned down.

139. Being in line or skirmish-line at halt: 1. **With dummy (blank or ball) cartridges, 2. LOAD.**

At the command **LOAD,** each front-rank man or skirmisher faces half right and carries the right foot to the right, about one foot, to such position as will insure the greatest firmness and steadiness of the body; raises or lowers the piece and drops it into the left hand at the balance, left thumb extended along the stock, muzzle at the height of the breast. With the right hand he turns and draws the bolt back, takes a cartridge between the thumb and first two fingers and places it in the receiver; places palm of the hand against the back of the bolt handle; thrusts the bolt home with a quick motion, turning down the handle, and carries the hand to the small of the stock. Each rear-rank man moves to the right front, takes a similar

Digitized by Google

position opposite the interval to the right of the front-rank man, muzzle of the piece extending beyond the front rank, and loads.

A skirmish-line may load while moving, the pieces being held as nearly as practicable in the position of **load**.

If kneeling or sitting, the position of the piece is similar; if kneeling, the left forearm rests on the left thigh; if sitting, the elbows are supported by the knees. If lying down, the left hand steadies and supports the piece at the balance, the toe of the butt resting on the ground, the muzzle off the ground.

For reference, these positions (standing, kneeling, and lying down) are designated as that of **load.**

141. FILL MAGAZINE.

Take the position of **load**, if not already there, open the gate of the magazine with the right thumb, take five cartridges from the box or belt, and place them, with the bullets to the front, in the magazine, turning the barrel slightly to the left to facilitate the insertion of the cartridges; close the gate and carry the right hand to the small of the stock.

To load from the magazine, the command **From magazine** will be given preceding that of **LOAD**; the **cut-off** will be turned up on coming to the position of **load.**

To resume loading from the belt, the command **From belt** will be given preceding the command **LOAD**; the **cut-off** will be turned down on coming to the position of **load.**

The commands **From magazine** and **From belt,** indicating the change in the manner of loading, will not be repeated in subsequent commands.

The words **from belt** apply to cartridge-box as well as belt.

In loading from the magazine, care should be taken to push the bolt fully forward and turn the handle down before drawing the bolt back, as otherwise the extractor will not catch the cartridge in the chamber, and jamming will occur with the cartridge following.

To fire from the magazine, the command **MAGAZINE FIRE** may be given at any time. The cut-off is turned up and an increased rate of fire is executed. After the magazine is exhausted the cut-off is turned down and the firing continued, loading from the belt.

Magazine fire is employed only when, in the opinion of the platoon leader or company commander the maximum rate of fire becomes necessary.

Digitized by Google

142. UNLOAD.

All take the position of **load,** turn the **cut-off** up, if not already there, turn the safety lock to the left, and alternately open and close the chamber until all the cartridges are ejected. After the last cartridge is ejected the chamber is closed and the trigger pulled. The cartridges are then picked up, cleaned, and returned to the box or belt, and the piece brought to the **order.**

148. CLIP FIRE.

Turn the cut-off up; **fire at will** (reloading from the magazine) until the cartridges in the piece are exhausted; turn the **cut-off** down; fill magazine; reload and take the position of **suspend firing.**

150. CEASE FIRING.

Firing stops; pieces not already there are brought to the position of **load,** the cartridge is drawn or the empty shell is ejected, the trigger is pulled, sights are laid down, and the piece is brought to the **order.**

Cease firing is used for long pauses, to prepare for changes of position or to steady the men.

Digitized by Google

This book should be returned to the Library on or before the last date stamped below.

A fine of five cents a day is incurred by retaining it beyond the specified time.

Please return promptly.

Digitized by Google